

Collection of Works by Tse Tsan Tai  
(Xie Zuantai 謝纘泰, 1872–1938)  
DRAFT 繁體字版  
(Traditional Character Version)

Dong WANG, Ph.D., Ph.D.

July 4, 2023

To cite this collection of historical sources:

*Collection of Works by Tse Tsan Tai (1872-1938)*. Traditional character version. Compiled by Dong WANG, NW Germany, 2023.

This work is made available under a creative commons license



CC BY-NC-SA

See: <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-sa/4.0/>

# Preface

This book includes (a) a selection of Tse Tsan Tai's (謝纘泰 Xie Zuantai a.k.a. James Ah See 1872–1938) works that he in 1937 at the age of 65 selected for publication, (b) some letters associated with his publication plans, and (c) Chesney Duncan's biography of Tse (1917).

Intended as a companion to Dong Wang, *Tse Tsan Tai (1872–1938): An Australian-Cantonese Opinion Maker in British Hong Kong* (New York: Lived Places Publishing, 2023), the book provides an open-source, accessible, searchable and in-dexed collection of texts for further exploration by students of Modern Chinese History. It brings together hitherto scattered historical sources and facilitates their reading by today's readers.

Although the texts are written in stylistically excellent and lucid English, the factor that confounds reading most is the patchwork of transliteration of Chinese names and expressions that the reading public in the late nineteenth and early twentieth century Far East would have been familiar with as it flourished in the English-language print media, public communication and private letters. The mixture of Cantonese, Mandarin, and other dialectal pronunciations, the official postal place name spellings, competing transcription principles, orthographic inconsistencies, as well as idiosyncrasies in naming practices, however, make the texts cumbersome to read for readers one hundred years on. The solutions offered here include the use of Hanyu Pinyin, an index and the choice between simplified and traditional Chinese characters.

The book is, accordingly, presented in *two* versions: One with Tse's original spelling (transcription) of all Chinese names and expressions, combined with tra-

ditional Chinese characters in left-to-right reading order. The other with Hanyu Pinyin spelling of Chinese names and words and simplified Chinese characters. Both contain an index of Chinese and non-Chinese (real and mythical) person names, Chinese place names, organizations, events, newspaper names, book titles, slogans and manifestos.

The texts are presented in full with all original inconsistencies, typographical and grammatical errors, spelling mistakes, and other infelicities intact; and with original page numbers indicated in the margins. Alterations that Tse made by hand in the original prints are carried out and specified in end-notes alongside the original right-left reading order of Chinese characters. The pdf pages are electronically searchable. I have, furthermore, added rudimentary Hanyu Pinyin transcriptions to lengthy quotes from an unidentified “ancient Chinese history” book (i.e. cosmology, origin myth and legend).

Most person and place names as well as many other details in the texts have been tacitly corroborated. However, apart from including persons’ birth and death years (where known) in the index and adding limited transcription as mentioned above, no other attempt has been made to supplement, annotate, interpret, or explicitly validate the texts.

The compiler does not accept liability for any mistakes or for Tse Tsan Tai’s opinions and formulations; she explicitly draws attention to the fact that this book is a collection of historical sources published for critical analysis by professional historians and for research training purposes; the texts have not been edited for sensibility, or proofed for the veracity of assertions made in them.

The two uploaded versions may in the future be subject to minor updates aimed at correcting any mistakes, improve the index or add aspects not already included. Where major changes occur, they will be uploaded with a new edition number and explanatory notes.

Dong Wang  
Lower Rhine, Germany  
March 2023



Figure 1: Tse Tsan Tai, "The Situation in the Far East" (Shiju quantu 時局全圖), 1899. Source: Unknown, public domain.



# Contents

<b>Preface</b>	<b>iii</b>
<b>1 The Creation (1914)</b>	<b>1</b>
Introduction . . . . .	3
Garden of Eden . . . . .	6
Creation . . . . .	10
Peopling of the World . . . . .	12
Beginning of Civilization . . . . .	16
The Deluge . . . . .	20
Re-Peopling of the World . . . . .	28
Great Antiquity of the Chinese . . . . .	29
Origin of the Chinese and their Religion . . . . .	30
Origin of the Jews . . . . .	42
China's Indigenous Civilization . . . . .	42
Universal Peace and Brotherhood of Man . . . . .	44
Why God Punished Europe . . . . .	45
Notes . . . . .	54
<b>2 Pamphlets (1915–1923)</b>	<b>55</b>
Cradle of the Human Race (1915) . . . . .	56
Proofs of the Deluge (1917) . . . . .	61
Real Situation of "Eden" (1918) . . . . .	69
China During the Deluge (1918) . . . . .	77
Truth of the Bible (1919) . . . . .	82

Loess and the Deluge . . . . .	88
Dark Mystery of the East (1921) . . . . .	99
Colour of Our Primitive Ancestors (1922) . . . . .	103
Origin of Mongolian Desert (1923) . . . . .	110
“Correlativity” (1922) . . . . .	114
Easter Island Mystery (1923) . . . . .	120
Ancient History (1923) . . . . .	127
Notes . . . . .	139
<b>3 The Chinese Republic</b>	<b>141</b>
Preface . . . . .	142
Foreword . . . . .	144
Introduction . . . . .	149
Sowing trhe Seed . . . . .	150
Unification of Parties . . . . .	156
Union and Cooperation . . . . .	162
Second Attempt to Capture Canton . . . . .	165
The Rescue of King Lien-shan . . . . .	167
The Revolution . . . . .	181
Abdication of the Manchus . . . . .	187
Conclusion . . . . .	198
Notes . . . . .	199
<b>4 Ancient Chinese Art</b>	<b>201</b>
Introduction . . . . .	205
Origin . . . . .	205
Development . . . . .	206
Technique . . . . .	208
Schools . . . . .	212
Masters . . . . .	214
Foreign Criticism . . . . .	218
Conclusion . . . . .	219



Appendix . . . . .	219
Notes . . . . .	220
<b>5 Short Articles (1924–1937)</b>	<b>221</b>
Oldest Beetle in the World (1924) . . . . .	222
The Mystery of the Deluge (1931) . . . . .	226
A Prehistoric City (1931) . . . . .	232
Jesus or Buddha (1936) . . . . .	234
Racial Knowledge (1937) . . . . .	237
Notes . . . . .	238
<b>6 Tse's Package</b>	<b>239</b>
Clara Mitchell 1937 . . . . .	239
Notes . . . . .	246
<b>7 Tse's Biography 1917</b>	<b>247</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>257</b>
<b>Bibliography</b>	<b>271</b>



# List of Figures

1	Tse Tsan Tai, "The Situation in the Far East" . . . . .	v
1.1	Tse Tsan Tai, "Eden." . . . . .	5
1.2	Note found in Tse's package . . . . .	8
1.3	Handbill advertizing <i>The Origin of the Chinese</i> , 1917 . . . . .	32
1.4	Descent of the Chinese from Adam . . . . .	47
2.1	A slip Tse Tsan Tai pasted into the first six pamphlets. . . . .	55
2.2	Frontpage, Pamphlet 12 . . . . .	128
4.1	Ta Tung Palace by Li Ssu Hsün . . . . .	203
6.1	The first lines of Tse's letter . . . . .	240
6.2	Corrections . . . . .	243
6.3	Mitchell's visiting card . . . . .	245



# Chapter 1

## The Creation. The Real Situation of Eden and the Origin of the Chinese

### WORKS CONSULTED

The Bible (Roman Catholic Edition)

The Bible (Protestant Edition)

Ancient Chinese History

Clare's History of the World

Encyclopedia Britannica

Chambers Encyclopedia.

---

a. Original Publication: Tsan Tai Tse, *The Creation., the Real Situation of Eden, and the Origin of the Chinese* (Hongkong: Kelly & Walsh, Ltd., 1914)

*To all who are working for  
Universal Peace  
and the  
Brotherhood of Man  
this book is respectfully dedicated.*

## Introduction

FOR many years, ever since the day I could read and understand the Bible, the question of the Cradle of the Human Race and the Origin of the Chinese has been receiving my fervent and serious attention.<sup>1</sup> Although I have read much ancient history, and carefully considered and weighed the theories of different writers, and studied the results of the archæological and geographical investigations and excavations which have been made in all parts of the world, they have not been able to convince me that the Cradle of the Human Race is in either of the two spots, in (1) Armenia and (2) the Euphrates Valley, as stated in the Bible *translation*<sup>2</sup> of Genesis and fixed by past authorities, and as is generally taught and believed by mankind throughout the world.

This has always caused me much worry of mind and anxiety of heart.

And, during my study of the Bible and Ancient Chinese History, on Sunday the 25th October, 1914, I discovered a clue to the unravelling of the mystery, and it suddenly dawned upon me, like a flash of light, that the Cradle of the Human Race was not where it is now reputed and believed to be, but, in Chinese Turkestan (新疆), in the plateau of Central Asia<sup>3</sup> and also that the Chinese race originated there.

I felt so happy and delighted with my discovery, that I immediately followed up the clue, and commenced writing this, my book, and forgetting food and sleep, finished the draft at 8 a.m., on Wednesday, the 28th October, 1914, when the thunder pealed and the lightning flashed. The revision and re-writing of my book was completed after seven days and seven nights ceaseless labour, on the 1st November, 1914, after which, I rested for three days. I know that without God's inspiration and help it would have been impossible for me to write this book as I have done. viii

It is now my earnest hope and prayer that archæological and bibliographical

investigations will be carried on in this part of the world, and that the result will be, as I have said.

And, further, I fervently beseech all those, who think with me, to spread the good tidings contained in this, my book, so that, henceforth, all men will believe in God and the Bible<sup>4</sup> and love each other as brothers; and peace and happiness shall reign for ever on Earth.

TSE TSAN TAI,

謝纘泰聖安<sup>5</sup>

1st November, 1914.



Supplement to "THE CREATION; AND THE ORIGIN OF THE CHINESE" by Tse Tsan Tai.  
ENGLISH EDITION.—Published by Messrs. Kelly & Walsh, Ltd., Hongkong, Shanghai, Singapore, and Yokohama.  
CHINESE EDITION.—Published by the "Tsao Wen Tai Pa" 新報日報社 Hongkong, China.  
(Contains Proofs of the Deluge.)

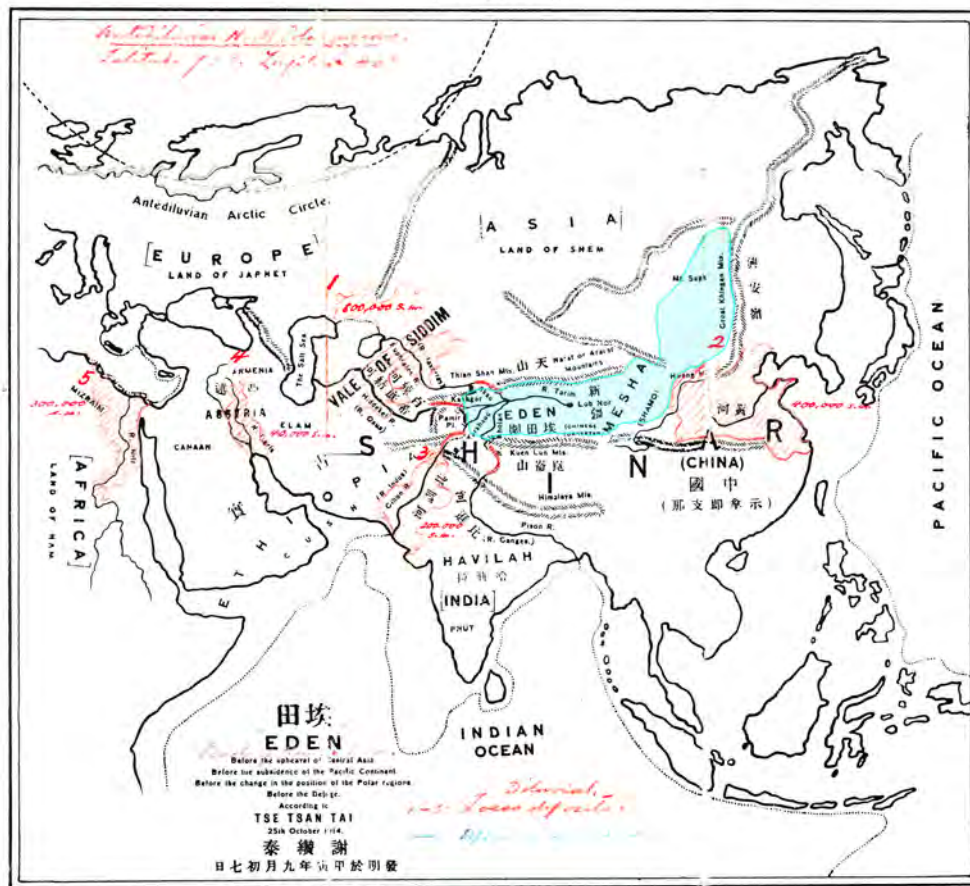


Figure 1.1: Tse Tsan Tai, "Eden."

1

## The Garden of Eden and the Cradle of the Human Race

The Cradle of the Human Race and the Origin of the Chinese have been questions which have engrossed the attention of ethnographers and philologists for centuries, but without their having arrived at anything definite and conclusive.

I, too, have devoted my life-time<sup>a</sup> to the study and silent investigation of this great and highly important question.

That the Cradle of the Human Race is in Asia is beyond doubt, but, the question is—Where is this Cradle?

The Bible *translation*<sup>6</sup> of Genesis says that the parent stock of the human race saw the light in the “Garden of Eden” in the Euphrates Valley. Archæologists and bibliographers have also located the Garden of Eden in (1) Armenia, and in (2) the valley of the Tigris and Euphrates, comprising that portion of the Mesopotamian Plain at the head of the Persian Gulf.

Is it likely that Almighty God would create man and place him in such a corner of the World?

I say the Cradle of the Human Race — “The Garden of Eden” — is in Chinese Turkestan (新疆) in the plateau of Central Asia<sup>7</sup> and I will now state my reasons.

2 When the north of the Asiatic Continent was not so cold and frozen as it is at the present day, and when gigantic beasts, reptiles, and strange birds roamed its vast plains and inhabited its dense forests, the primitive ancestors of the human race were created and first saw the light in that crescent-shaped oasis of the plateau of Central Asia<sup>8</sup> by the Tributaries of the Tarim River, bounded on the north by the Tien-shan Mountains (天山), on the west by the Pamir Tableland, on the south by the Kuen Lun Mountains (崑崙山) Mountains, and the highlands

---

a. The Author was born on 16th May, 1872.

of Tibet, and on the East by the Gobi desert, and now called Chinese Turkestan (新疆).

No doubt, the close proximity of Tibet to the "Garden of Eden," accounts for the similarity of the religious "ceremonies"<sup>9</sup> of the Tibetan Buddhistic "Church" to those of the Roman Catholic Church, which must have sprung from the same source.<sup>a</sup>

The following Bible proofs support my discovery:—

[Genesis II.8. "God planted a garden *eastward in Eden*; and there He put the man whom He had formed."]

And, further,—

[Genesis II.10. "And a river went out of Eden to water the garden; and from thence it was parted, and became into four heads."]

Gold and precious stones are also mentioned in Genesis II. 11-12. This spot, "*eastward in Eden*," must, therefore, be in Central Asia<sup>11</sup> and not in Asia Minor,<sup>12</sup> and this is one of my principal reasons for locating the "Garden of Eden" in Chinese Turkestan.

And, what is more convincing proof: the river Tarim, with its four tributaries or "heads,"<sup>b</sup> flows eastward through the crescent-shaped oasis of Chinese Turkestan, and empties itself into the Lop Nor; and the country traversed by the river and its four tributaries is well known to be full of gold and precious stones. The bed of the Yarkhand River is covered with precious jade pebbles of different colours, and some of the mountain sides also contain jade of various colours, which have been quarried in ancient times. According to the Ancient Chinese Record of the Deluge, the stones quarried by (女媧氏) Noah, after the Deluge, were of five different colours from the Tianshan Mountains (天山). 3

---

a. Religion of God — The God of Moses and the ancient Chinese.<sup>10</sup>      b. The 'four heads' are as follows: 1. Yarkhand R. — Indus River — (Gihon River); 2. Kashgar R. — Oxus River — (Hiddakel River); 3. Khotan R. — Ganges River — (Pison River); 4. Aksu R. — Jaxartes — (Euphrates River.) N. B. Before the great upheaval of Central Asia, these 4 'heads' flowed westward. (See supplementary map of China.)<sup>13</sup>

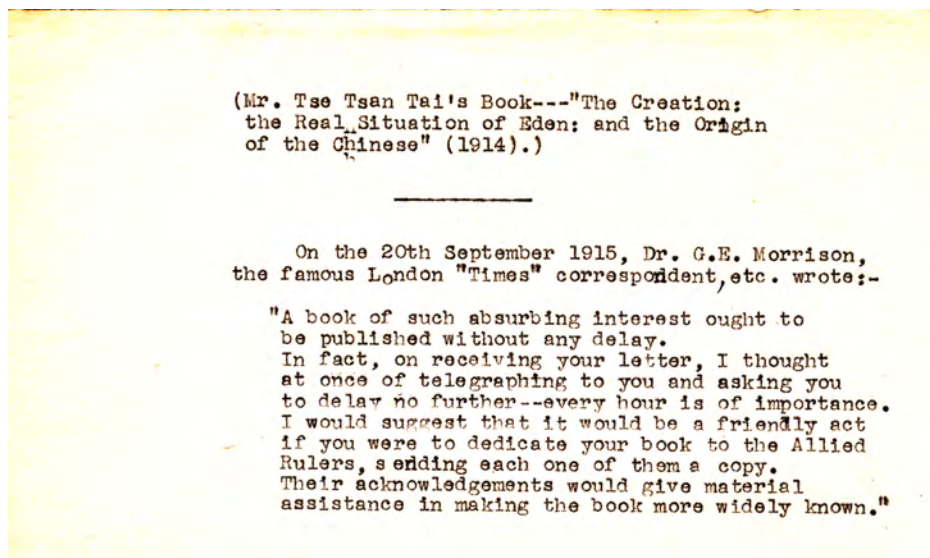


Figure 1.2: Note found in Tse's package

It is noteworthy that Chaldea and Mesopotamia produced no precious Stones or minerals of any kind. But, the country yielded an abundant supply of clay and bitumen!

Again, the following proves beyond doubt, that the "Garden of Eden," — the Cradle of the Human Race, — was not in Western Asia (Asia Minor): —

[Genesis XI. 1-2. "And the whole earth was of one language, and of one speech. And it came to pass, as they *journeyed from the East*, that they found a plain in the land of Shinar, and they dwelt there."]

It would interesting to know whether this land of Shinar (China)<sup>14</sup> was in the Mongolian Plateau north of the Hwang Ho (Yellow River) bend, or refers to the lowlands of Shensi (陝西) province in China, where the ancestors of the Chinese race first settled down and made their home.

- 4 After the Flood, the sons of Noah must have journeyed further East along the shores of the upheaved inland sea in the direction of the Great Khingan Mountains of the Mongolian Plateau, and "journeying from the East" finally

settled in the *plain of Shinar* (China),<sup>a</sup> where they started making bricks for the building of the “Tower of Babel.”<sup>16</sup> They probably traversed the same stretch of territory as the Chinese of the Han (漢) dynasty, — who conquered Turkestan in 76 B.C., — with the exception of what is now known as China proper.

[Genesis XI. 3.4. “And they said one to another, go to, let us make brick, and burn them thoroughly. And they had brick for stone, and slime had they for mortar.

And they said, go to, let us build us a city and a tower, whose top may reach unto heaven; and let us make us a name, lest we be scattered abroad upon the face of the whole earth.”]

Ancient ruins exist in the province of Shensi (陝西); and, strange to say, China is the land of bricks, high towers (pagodas), and strange dialects.

[The Tower of Babel was built by Nemrod, the son of Chus, a nephew to Shem,<sup>17</sup> about three score years after the Flood.

He began a new sect of infidels, but the godly men refused to join these infidels.

God confounded them, and they were separated into many nations, about 140 years after the Flood, (Genesis XI. 8.9.)

After Nemrod, his son Belus reigned in Babylon about B.C. 1871, 215 years after the Flood.]

Therefore, I say, again, the “Garden of Eden,” — the Cradle of the Human Race, — is in Chinese Turkestan. 5

And, consequently, it will now be necessary to revise the *translation*<sup>18</sup> of the Hebrew Text of the Bible, and certain “additions” (translator’s) will have to be expurgated. And, also, it will be necessary to revise Ancient History, and particularly China’s Ancient History, as names and dates are so confused.

---

a. The Great loess plain of Central China (Hwang Ho River Basin) is 400,000 square miles in area.<sup>15</sup>

Noah must have lived near “Eden”<sup>19</sup> at the time of the Deluge, and this I will prove by the Ancient Chinese Record of the Deluge, and by subsequent geological, archæological, geographical, and zoological discoveries.

In order to prove that the Chinese are the descendants of Adam and Noah, I will now give a brief history of the Ancient Chinese Record of the Creation and the Deluge.

## The Creation

According to ancient Chinese tradition and the written records of the Creation and the Deluge, which have been handed down from time immemorial, the story is as follows: —

天地初開張<sup>20</sup>

tian di chu kai zhang

In the beginning, when Heaven and Earth were created (by God).

盤古辨陰陽<sup>21</sup>

Pangu bian yin yang

Panku (Adam) was changed into a male (陽) and a female (陰).

6

[According to Genesis II. 21.–22., the first woman was made from one of the ribs of Adam.]

天形如卵白<sup>22</sup>

tian xing ru luan bai

The Firmament (Heaven) assumed the position of that of the white of an egg.

地形如卵黃<sup>23</sup>

di xing ru luan huang

The Earth assumed the position of that of the yolk of an egg. (Genesis I. 1–10).

五行生萬物<sup>24</sup>

wu xing sheng wan wu

The Five Elements (土火水木金), *i.e.*, the Earth, brought forth all living things, *i.e.*, all living things were created by God.

[In the beginning God created Heaven and Earth, and all living things therein, in six days, man being created in the sixth<sup>25</sup> and last day. (Genesis I).

The six “days” of the creation must have been six “periods,” meaning, perhaps, millions of years.]

六合運三光<sup>26</sup>

liu he yun san guang

The Three Lights (Sun (日), Moon (月), and Stars (星)) revolved in space (六合) — the limitless space contained in the (六合) six points, viz., North, South, East, West, Zenith and Nadir, — *i.e.*, God created the Sun, Moon and Stars, and set them in the firmament of the heaven to give light upon the earth. (Genesis I. 16–17.)

## The Peopling of the World

### 三皇紀<sup>27</sup>

san huang ji

The Record of the Three Patriarchs of China

1. Adam (天皇)
2. Cain (地皇)
3. Seth (人皇)

### 天皇十二子<sup>28</sup>

tianhuang shier zi

1. Adam had twelve “successors” (子).

[The generations from Adam to Noah are: — Seth, Enos, Cainan, Malaleel, Jared, Henoah, Mathusala, Lamech, Noah, Shem, Ham and Japhet, — twelve in all.]

[Adam was created by God, and this is why the Chinese called him “Tien Huang” (天皇)]

### 地皇十一郎無為而自化歲起攝提綱<sup>29</sup>

dihuang shiyi lang wu wei er zi hua sui qi she ti gang

2. Including himself, Cain had eleven “brethren”<sup>30</sup> (郎). His generations are those without notice of the time when they were born or died.

[Cain was a husbandman. (Genesis IV. 2.) This is why the Chinese called him “Ti Hwang” (地皇).

Being a murderer, his generations are unnoticed and forgotten.]



人皇九兄弟<sup>31</sup>

renhuang jiu xiongdi

3. Seth (人皇) and his eight “successors”<sup>32</sup>(Enos, Cainan, Malaleel, Jared, Henoch, Mathusala, Lamech, Noah.) Nine in all.

[Seth peopled the Earth, and this is why the Chinese called him “Jen Hwang” (人皇).]

8

受命最延長<sup>33</sup>

suiming zui yanchang

Were most long-lived

[All were nearly one thousand years old, when they died. See Genesis V.]

各萬八千歲<sup>34</sup>

ge wanbaqian sui

Each lived to eighteen thousand “years,” (歲), “full” moons, *i.e.* months.<sup>35</sup>

[It is not known how many days or months constituted one of these “years” (歲), as there was no calendar in existence then.]

一人興一邦<sup>36</sup>

yi ren xing yi bang

Each established a tribe or nation.

[Cain and Seth's descendants must have inhabited the whole district, now known as the Gobi Desert and Mongolian plateau to the east of the Tarim River district ("Garden of Eden") of Chinese Turkestan, and north of the Hwang Ho River.]

[See Genesis III. 24. "So He drove out the man; and He placed at the east of the Garden of Eden Cherubims, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to keep the way of the tree of life."]

### 分掌九州地發育無邊疆<sup>37</sup>

fenzhang jiu zhou di fayu wu bianjiang

They separated and occupied nine continents, and flourished and spread throughout the World.

[At the time of the Creation there were certainly nine continents in existence, viz.,]

1. Europe — Inhabited by primitive man before the Deluge.
2. Asia — Inhabited by primitive man before the Deluge.
- 9 3. Africa — Inhabited by primitive man before the Deluge.
4. N. and S. America (2 Continents) — Inhabited by primitive man before the Deluge.
5. Australia — Inhabited by primitive man before the Deluge.
6. N. Polar Continent — Inhabited by primitive man before the Deluge.
7. S. Polar Continent — Uninhabited from the time of the Deluge.
8. Malayasian Continent — Inhabited by primitive man before the Deluge.

9. Polynesian ("Pacific") Continent<sup>38</sup> — Inhabited by primitive man before the Deluge.
  
10. (Cretan Archipelago).<sup>39</sup>

The nine continents were originally connected with each other, and, therefore, became inhabited by primitive man.

The South Polar Continent being an island and separated by a wide expanse of ocean, primitive man had no means of reaching it, and, therefore, it has remained uninhabited up to the present day.

Some of these continents must have become submerged at the time of the Deluge,<sup>a</sup> and this accounts for the bones of extinct animals, and primitive man being found in the geological deposits (loess)<sup>41</sup> of the different continents of the World. And, it is possible that there were further seismic disturbances and subsidences after the Deluge. Easter Island with its rude stone statues, and stone houses with interiors bearing paintings of birds, animals, etc., are the remains of one of these submerged continents.]

---

a. Over ten groups of islands in the Pacific Ocean contain megalithic remains of an ante-diluvian prehistoric civilization, proving the subsidence of the "Pacific" Continent.<sup>40</sup>

## The Beginning of Civilization

有巢氏以出<sup>42</sup>

Youchao Shi yi chu

At the time of Yu Chao (Shi).

食木始為糧<sup>43</sup>

shi mu shi wei liang

Men ate fruits and plants as food.

構木為巢室<sup>44</sup>

gou mu wei chaoshi

Wood was used for making huts.

襲葉為衣裳<sup>45</sup>

xi ye wei yichang

Leaves of trees were patched together and used for clothing.

燧人氏一出烹飪得其方<sup>46</sup>

Suiren Shi yi chu pengren de qi fang

Sui Jen (Shi) invented the process of cooking.

鑽木取火<sup>47</sup>

zuan mu qu gai huo

He obtained fire by friction from the drilling or rubbing of wood.

飲食無所妨<sup>48</sup>

yinshi wusuo fang

Drinking and eating was now a convenient matter.

結繩記其事<sup>49</sup>

jie sheng ji qi shi

He invented knotted cord-symbols for recording events.

年代難考詳<sup>50</sup>

niandai nan kaoxiang

It is difficult to fix the date of these inventions.

## The Record of the Five Patriarchs of China

1. Fuhü - (Henoöh) — (伏羲太昊) Born B.C. 3382, "Died" B.C. 3017. (Translated to Heaven.)
2. Nü Wa - (Noah) — (女媧氏) Born B.C. 2948, Died B.C. 1998.

- 11 3. Shen Nung - (Shem) — (神農炎帝) Born B.C. 2448, Died B.C. 1848.
4. Hwang Ti - (Arphaxad) — (皇帝軒轅氏) Born B.C. 2346, Died B.C. 1908.
5. Yao - (Reu) — (帝堯陶唐氏.) Born B.C. 2217, Died B.C. 1978.

*Note.* — In Ancient Chinese History, full notice was only taken of godly men.

### I. Fuhi (Henoeh)

伏羲太昊立聖德播宣揚<sup>51</sup>

Fuxi Taihao li shengde bo xuanyang

Fuhi, i.e., Henoeh, “ruled.” His godliness was “overflowing.”

蛇身如牛首<sup>52</sup>

sheshen ru niushou

His body was scaly like a snake, and his head was like that of an ox, *i.e.*, his eyes were large and his forehead and facial bones prominent.

形容子異章<sup>53</sup>

xing rong zi yichang

His mien was extraordinary in appearance.

命倉頡制字後代習成章<sup>54</sup>

ming Cangjie zhi zi houdai xicheng zhang

He ordered Tsong Chi to design a script. The generations which followed derived their Alphabets and Literature from this (hieroglyphic) script.

[He was guided in his task by the imprints of the feet of animals and birds. (See Commentary). The Assyrian Cuneiform Script was doubtless based upon these ancient hieroglyphics.]

12

河圖龍馬獻<sup>55</sup>

he tu longma xian

A drawing of the river Hwang Ho revealed the form of the dragon and the horse to him.

[This is how Chinese Art originated. The dragon must have been one of those gigantic, extinct, four-footed, antediluvian reptiles of Northern Asia and America.]

畫卦明陰陽<sup>56</sup>

huagua ming yinyang

He designed the "Eight Trigrams" (八卦) and knew life, *i.e.*, he was able to divine.

[Genesis V. 24. And Henoah walked with God: and he was not; for God took him.]

男女教嫁娶儷皮爲禮將<sup>57</sup>

nannü jiao jiaqu lipi wei lijiang

He legalized marriage, the skins of wild animals being used for betrothal purposes.

養牲供庖食畜馬牛豬羊<sup>58</sup>

yang sheng gong paoshi xu ma niu zhu yang

He taught the people how to rear horses, oxen, pigs, and sheep for purposes of trade and for food.

[It is a noteworthy fact that these animals are frequently mentioned in the Bible, and, besides, the Central Asian plateau is known to be the home of the *wild ancestors* of several of our domestic animals, viz., the wild horse, ox, camel, donkey, goat, sheep, pig, etc.]

## The Deluge

TUBAL-CAIN

祝融共工氏交兵相戰爭<sup>59</sup>

Zhurong Gonggong Shi jiaobing xiang zhanzheng

During the time of Chu Yung Kung Kung (Shi) *i.e.*, (Tubal-cain), the land was disturbed by violence and internecine strife.

[Tubal-cain was an instructor of every artificer in brass and iron. The characters (共工) mean artificers in all trades. (See Genesis IV. 22.)]



共工不勝怒頭觸周山崩<sup>60</sup>

Gonggong bu shengnu touchu zhou shan beng

Men became exceedingly incensed with each other.  
And, there was *great wickedness* (in the World).

上 (帝) 驚<sup>61</sup>

shang(di) jing

God became alarmed, and angry (with the World).

天 (山) 柱折下震地維穿<sup>62</sup>

Tian(shan) zhu zhe xia zhen di wei chuan

(He visited his wrath upon the Earth by a great universal and terrestrial upheaval).  
The pillars<sup>a</sup> of Tienshan (天山) collapsed and fell, and great chasms formed in  
the earth. (This resulted in the Deluge) Genesis VI. 1—8.

## II—Nü Wa (Noah)

女媧氏以立鍊石以補天 (山)<sup>63</sup>

Nüwa Shi yi li lian shi yi bu tian (shan)

Nü Wa (Shi) *i.e.*, Noah “ruled.” He (after the subsidence of the waters, which had deluged the land), quarried stones for the repair of Tianshan (天山) *i.e.*, the repairing or damming up of the mouth of Gaib gorge.

斷麓足立極地勢得其堅<sup>64</sup>

duan bizu li ji dishi de qi jian

Having cut the foot of the gorge and strengthened the foundations, the safety of the land was secured.

聚灰止淹水天 (山) 地得依然<sup>65</sup>

juhui zhi yan shui Tian(shan) di de yiran

Having dammed and trained the waters of the channels, the locality of Tianshan (天山) resumed its former state.

14

傳位十五氏不可考根源<sup>66</sup>

chuan wei shiwu shi bu ke kao genyuan

[He had fifteen successors, but it is difficult to trace their history. (Genesis IX.)]

[<sup>67</sup>The generations of Noah, and his three sons Shem, Ham and Japhet, are as follows: —

Sons of	{	女媧氏 Noah	}	: —	{	Shem Ham Japhet	}
Sons of	{	Japhet	}	: —	{	Gomer Magog Madai Javan Thubal Mosoch Thiras	}
Sons of	{	Ham	}	: —	{	Chus Mesraim Phut Canaan	}
Sons of	{	神農炎帝 Shem	}	: —	{	Elam Asshur Arphaxad Lud Aram Hus Hul Shem Gether Mosch	}
Sons of	{	皇帝軒轅氏 Arphaxad	}	: —	{	Sale	}
Sons of	{	少昊金天氏 Sale	}	: —	{	Heber (Ancestor of the Hebrew nation)	}
Sons of	{	顓頊高陽氏 Heber	}	: —	{	Phaleg (In his days the Earth was divided) Jectan (Ancestor of the Japanese nation)	}
Sons of	{	帝嚳高辛氏 Phaleg	}	: —	{	帝堯陶唐氏 Reu	}

The fifteen generations of Noah and Shem in the direct line, are as follows: — *i.e.*, Shem, Elam, Asshur, Arphaxad, Lud, Aram, Hus, Hul, Gether, Mosoch, Sale, Heber, Phaleg, Jectan, and Reu — fifteen in all.

The Continent of Asia was named after Asshur.

The Chinese Record of Ta Yü (大禹) and the “Flood” is, now, quite clear. He merely drained that portion of the basin of the Hwang Ho, which had been devastated by one of those terrible floods for which this river is famous. It is noteworthy that the portion of this river in Shensi (陝西) and Shansi (山西) has *nine* tributaries, which are referred to in Chinese History.

15

At the time of the Deluge, Noah was 600 years old, and Shem 100 years.]<sup>68</sup>

The Chinese Record of the Creation and the Deluge from Adam to Noah ends here.

[It appears that all the Chinese commentators have failed to decipher the true meaning of much of this Ancient Chinese Record of the Creation and the Flood. And, not being able to understand, they allowed their imagination to run riot. The Chinese commentators made a great mistake in believing that Nü Wa (Shi) (女媧氏) was a woman and the consort or sister of Fuhi, and an imaginary female deity! This is why this particular portion of China's ancient history is so confused and vague, and why dates are in disagreement with those of the Bible.

Disregarding all the mythical and fictitious portions of these ancient commentaries of the Creation and the Flood, it is noteworthy that the main chronological facts agree with the more important events of the Creation and the Flood as recorded in the Bible.

16 Now, this terrestrial and universal upheaval, which is mentioned in the Chinese Record of the Creation, and the Deluge, must have altered the beds of seas and rivers, and caused continents to rise and fall, resulting in a Deluge (tidal wave), which flooded the whole world, and turned that portion of the Asian (Continental) plateau,<sup>69</sup> now known as the Gobi Desert, and Chinese Turkestan, into a vast Inland Sea. It is impossible for rain itself to submerge the whole earth, because only a percentage of the water that is evaporated by the sun returns to the earth again as rain. This is one of the reasons why scientists and geologists doubt the truth of the Bible story of the Creation and the Deluge.

This mighty cataclysmic upheaval must<sup>70</sup> have been due to some seismic disturbance, leading<sup>71</sup> to the changing of the slope<sup>a</sup> of the Earth's axis, due<sup>73</sup> to upheavals or subsidences of land,<sup>74</sup> resulting in a Tidal Wave<sup>75</sup> and the sudden freezing of the northern parts of the continents of Asia and America (N.W.), and the sudden death by freezing or drowning of all those gigantic mammals, saurians, etc., of

---

a. List of about 15° (about 1,000 miles.).<sup>72</sup>

the antediluvian age. This accounts for mammoths and other extinct animals being found in Siberia under the ice and snow, and quite near the surface of the ground, and for the strong glacial indications, and deposits found in certain parts of the world — the *North Pole regions of The Creation*.

I firmly believe that at the time of the Creation, and before the Deluge, the North Pole<sup>a</sup> was in the region of North Central Greenland,<sup>77</sup> and this accounts for the Polar glacial indications found in the N.E. portion of North America, Scotland, Ireland, Norway, and Northern Europe.

17

According to geologists, in no part of the World are evidences of glacial action more extensive or more interesting than in the northern two-thirds of North America. The Labrador peninsula is in the main, a most forbidding and desolate expanse, covered with rocks and precipices, and having a winter far more rigorous and inhospitable than that of Lapland or even Siberia.

The northern parts of Siberia show no evidences of Polar glacial action. The whole of West Siberia, between the Alpine belt and the shores of the Arctic Ocean, is an immense lowland. The southern part of these lowlands — the prairies of Ishim, Upper Tobol, and Barata — is extremely fertile. The soil is a *thick layer of black earth*, which also penetrates into the lower valleys of the Altai, and the traveller finds there (within 16 degrees of the Arctic Circle), to his astonishment, a territory, nearly as large as Great Britain, entirely covered with a luxurious grass vegetation, with masses of *deciduous forest*, which is even now the granary of Siberia. Labrador is similarly situated in latitude, but, note the *great difference* in geological and climatic conditions. Farther north still begin the *tundras*, which extend along the Arctic seaboard as far as Kamchatka, and cover an aggregate area of some 450,000 square miles. The soil is *alluvial*

18

---

a. About Latitude 75°, Longitude 40°.<sup>76</sup>

*and agricultural*, but, owing to the terrible cold of December and January, — 15 to 35 degrees below zero, — trees and vegetation are, now, scarce.

These are all indisputable proofs that the freezing of Northern Asia has been due to a change in the inclination of the Earth's axis, and the shifting of the position of the North Pole from the north of Greenland to its present position.

As the result of the numerous explorations and archæological excavations which have been made in Chinese Turkestan, it has been found that the Takla Makan Desert was once an immense lake. Fossils, gravel, sand, chalk grypœa, carboniferous deposits, and "mesozoic and tertiary transgressions" have been found, all indicating that the land was once convulsed by some seismic disturbance, and finally submerged.

Ruins of ancient cities abound in the Turfan Oasis, and in the Oases along the Tibet border, and interesting manuscripts have been found written in alphabets unknown to linguists.

- 19 What if they are the hieroglyphic script of Tsong Chi (倉頡)? Perhaps some of the ancient ruins in the Mongolian Plateau or the submerged Continent of Polynesia<sup>78</sup> may yet prove to be those of the City of Enoch built by Cain.

[Genesis IV. 16-17. "And Cain went out from the presence of the Lord, and dwelt in the land of Nod, on the *East* of *Eden*.

And Cain knew his wife; and she conceived, and bore Enoch: and he builded a city, and called the name of the city, after the name of his son, Enoch.]

Lake Bojante-kul Lake, south west of Lukchun, at the foot of Eastern Tienshan (天山), is 56 feet below sea level, and must be one of those

subsidences or depressions recorded in the Chinese Record of the Deluge (天(山)柱折下震維穿). There are other large depressions at the foot of the Tienshan (天山) Mountains. Obrucheff has shown that a local subsidence of the rocks took place at Lukchun, along a narrow strip parallel to the Tienshan (天山) Mountains. It is noteworthy that earthquakes desolate Central Asia with ever-increasing frequency. The Russian explorer, G. Grum-Grzmailo has also described immense boulders of a fine-grained grey granite, 14 to 17 feet high and 100 feet in circumference, which he found lying at an altitude of 3,200 feet about the mouth of the Gaib gorge, which descends from the Karlyktagh Mountains (12,000 feet) of eastern Tienshan (天山) in the N.E. of Hami. The rocks of this gorge consisted, both at this spot and higher up, of quite a different sort of granite and crystalline slates.

20

No doubt, these immense cylindrical boulders of a fine-grained grey granite were the stones quarried by Nü Wa (Shi) (Noah) (女媧氏) for repairing or damming up the Gaib gorge of Tienshan (天山) (煉石以補天(山)) so as to prevent the flooding of the plateau. Again, it is mentioned that it has on its north-western borders several broad trenches which are cut in its mass, like gigantic railway trenches leading with an imperceptible gradient from the lowlands to the heights of the plateau, and supposed to be channels for the drainage of the waters discharged by the plateau.

And, doubtless, these were also the channels which Nü Wa (Shi) (Noah) trained and utilized for draining off the waters from the Gaib gorge, and the plateau (聚灰止淹水天(山)地得依然).

Thus is the authenticity of the Ancient Chinese Record of the Deluge substantiated, and the incidents proved, for all time.

## The Real Mount Ararat

21 And, again, there are the Sarikol Mountains containing Mustaghata Peak (25,000 feet), which joins the Ulug-art (Ararat?) range of the Tienshan(天山) mountains. Close by there is also a range called the Narat Mountains. Mustaghata Peak must, therefore, be the Mount Ararat of the Bible, because it is the highest peak of these mountain ranges.

If the Bible story of the Flood is to be believed, how was it possible for Noah in his Ark to survey the submerged Earth from the top of Mount Ararat of Asia Minor?]

It is now clear that the Deluge was a *real fact*.

## The Re-Peopling of the World

After the waters of the Flood had subsided, the descendants of Noah and his three sons Shem, Ham, and Japhet, migrated eastward, in the direction of the Mongolian Plateau, and must have multiplied, and spread in all directions, journeying North, South, East, and West, along routes which offered the least resistance, gravitating to warmer climes, and establishing nations and civilizations distinct from each other, and undergoing changes in colour and features brought about by the temperature and the climatic conditions of their natural surroundings. This, no doubt, is accountable for the universal story of the Deluge, which appears to be the common property of all the races, — savage and civilized, — of the World.

Naturally, the migratory tendency of these tribes was to flee from the cold and arid regions of the North, and to go towards the East, West, and South.

22 The descendants of Shem (神農炎帝) established the Chinese, Chaldean, Assyrian, Median, Persian, Babylonian, Hebrew, Lydian, Mongolian, Manchurian (Tunguse), Japanese, Korean, and North and South American Indian nations; and the Yakuts, Voguls, Ostiaks, Samoyeds, and Esquimaux of the North Pole regions,



and the Tibetans, Nepalese, Indian races<sup>79</sup> of Northern India, Burmese, Siamese, Annamites, Malays, etc., are, likewise, descended from them, as also the natives of Australasia and Polynesia. And it is a remarkable fact that images resembling Chinese idols have been found in Arkansas (U.S.A.) and Mexico.

The descendants of Ham established the Egyptian, Ethiopian, Hindoo (Dravidian),<sup>80</sup> Arabian, and other kindred nations.

The descendants of Japhet established the Modern European nations, whose ancestors did not become thoroughly civilized, until the advent of Jesus Christ.

## The Great Antiquity of the Chinese

Proof of the great antiquity of the Chinese people is the fact that porcelain vessels, having Chinese mottos upon them, have been discovered in the ancient Egyptian tombs, in shape, material and appearance, exactly resembling those made in China. Rosellini, the great Italian antiquary, believed them to have been imported into Egypt from China by kings who reigned in Egypt about the time of Moses or before.

It appears that at the time of Deluge the human race was only able to record events by knotted cords and the hieroglyphic script of Fuki (Henoah) and Tsong Chi. After Deluge, the Chinese, owing to their isolation and continuous civilization, succeeded in evolving from the knotted cord-signs and hieroglyphics their present modern script. 23

The ancient Egyptians did not get much beyond their hieroglyphics, and all the other *dead* nations, and the Mongolians, Manchurians, Hindoos, Turks, Persians, Arabians, Malays, etc., evolved and adopted scripts based upon the ancient hieroglyphics or knotted cord-signs and symbols.

While great empires have successively risen and fallen in other parts of the world, China has remained the same for at least five thousand years, surviving all the great nations of Western Asia, Northern Africa, and Europe.

China is the only ancient empire which has continued to the present time.

Being surrounded by high and massive mountain chains, and extensive

deserts, and a wide expanse of ocean, it is no wonder that its existence and civilization remained a mystery to the surrounding nations for so many centuries.

China's civilization<sup>a</sup> has existed without change from time immemorial, and before that of the Nile Valley; and, at the time when the Egyptian kings were building their pyramids, China had a settled Government, and was enjoying a high state of civilization.

24

## The Origin of the Chinese and the Religion of the Chinese

The Chinese are the descendents of Shem. Shem (Shen Nung (神農炎帝) and his descendants established themselves in the Hwang Ho (Yellow River) basin, where the provinces of Shensi (陝西), Shansi (山西), and Honan (河南) now stand, thus founding the Chinese nation, and being God's chosen people. He led them into this "Land of Milk and Honey" to thrive and flourish, and to civilize the surrounding barbarous nations.

[Genesis IX. 26. And he (Noah, *i.e.* Nü Wa) said Blessed be the Lord God of Shem; and Canaan shall be his servant.]

This accounts for the ancient Chinese reverence and respect for Almighty God, — the Supreme Ruler (上帝) —embodied in the word "Tien" (天) *i.e.* Heaven.

This great reverence for Heaven, *i.e.*, God, dates from time immemorial, and can be traced to the earliest records of Chinese History.

Confucius, the Heaven-sent Sage and Teacher of China, had always the greatest reverence and respect for Heaven (天) *i.e.*, God, and it has been the same with all the sages and wise men of China, who went before, and who came

---

a. Great cities are buried beneath the 400,000 square miles of loess deposits of the Yellow River Valley district of China.<sup>81</sup>

after him. And, this is why God has protected and preserved the Chinese nation for so many thousands of years.

The religion of the ancient Chinese was a pure and unadulterated Theism, similar in every respect to that of the Jews, whose ancestors migrated into Chaldea from China, about B.C. 2,000.

# THE WORLD'S GREAT PROBLEM SOLVED.

## THE ORIGIN OF THE CHINESE

BY

TSE TSAN TAI.

(泰 績 謝)

The "Hongkong Daily Press"—"A remarkable book."

The "Hongkong Telegraph"—"A remarkable book."

Dr. G. E. Morrison, LL.D.—"An epoch-making work."

(See Peking London "Times" Correspondent.  
Political Advisor to the President of China.)

Reverend Timothy Richard, D.D.—"I should be glad if every missionary would purchase a copy of your book."

(Secretary Emeritus, Christian Literature Society  
for China.)

Professor C. A. Middleton Smith, M. Sc., M.I.M.E.—"You have shown quite clearly that Science and Religion are easily reconciled."

(University of Hongkong.)

The New York Academy of Sciences—"The work is particularly interesting to our Library because of your ethnological treatment of the descent of the different races, and will doubtless prove of much value."

(New York, U. S. A.)

Mr. Tse Tsan Tai's book has been favourably received by the leading Universities of the World, The Smithsonian Institution, The New York Academy of Sciences, and other famous Scientific Institutions. *Also the Vatican Library of Rome.*

**Price reduced to \$1.00**

KELLY & WALSH, Limited,

PUBLISHERS,

Hongkong, Shanghai, Yokohama and Singapore.

Hongkong, 11th May, 1917.

Figure 1.3: Handbill advertizing *The Origin of the Chinese*, 1917

Owing to the favourable position of this chosen land, and the formidability of it's natural surroundings, the Chinese race began to develop and flourish in peace, under the wise and beneficent rule of the Five Patriarchs, and the Emperors of succeeding dynasties, and to evolve a civilization and ethical culture distinctly it's own.

### III. — Shen Nung (Shem)

神農炎帝立<sup>82</sup>

Shennong Yandi li

Shen Nung (Shem) ruled

其始教民耕<sup>83</sup>

qi shi jiao min geng

He was the first to teach farming to the people.

斲木爲耒耜<sup>84</sup>

zhuo mu wei lei si

He was the first to invent farming implements.

衣食在桑田<sup>85</sup>

yi shi zai sang tian

Clothing and food were obtained from the mulberry and the fields.

[From this we gather that the Chinese were already wearing silk, as deduced from the words “clothing” and “mulberry.”

Cream coloured silk of the 1st Century A.D., from Yen Cheng, Shantung, was found by Sir Aurel Stein in the ruins of Lop Nor, — 1 foot 10 inches wide — of remarkable degree of finish, and proof of the high state of culture and standard of living which existed there at that period. And, further, a specimen discovered near Tun Huang bore a date contemporary with B.C. 94.]

26

親口嘗草木醫藥得相傳<sup>86</sup>

qin kou chang cao mu yiyao de xiangchuan

He personally tasted herbs and plants, and this resulted in a knowledge of medicine, and the cure of sickness.

教人爲貿易貨物並橫權<sup>87</sup>

jiao ren wei maoyi huowu bing heng quan

He taught the people how to do business, and introduced weights and measures for the weighing and selling of commercial products.

傳代凡八世五百廿五年<sup>88</sup>

chuan dai fan ba shi wubai nianwu nian

His descendants consisted of eight generations — 525 “years.”

[i.e. Arphaxad, Sale, Heber, Phaleg, Reu, Sarug, Nachor, Thare. (See Genesis.)

It is not known how many days or months constituted one of these “years.”]

#### VI.—Hwang Ti (Arphaxad)

皇帝軒轅氏人事漸完備<sup>89</sup>

Huangdi Xuanyuan Shi renshi jian wanbei

When Hwang Ti (Arphaxad) ruled, all things required for the use of man were practically complete and in existence.

諸侯始爭雄適習乾戈起<sup>90</sup>

Zhuhou shi zhengxiong shixi gange qi

It was then that the feudal lords began to become ambitious for power, and this resulted in war.

蚩尤嘗作亂作霧迷軍旅<sup>91</sup>

Chi You chang zuoluan zuowu mi junlü

Chi Yu attempted to rebel, and took advantage of a fog to screen the movements of his army.

帝造指南車起兵相戰敵<sup>92</sup>

Di zao zhinan che qi bing xiang zhan di

Hwang Ti invented a Compass-chariot, and assembling his forces, he advanced south and attacked Chi Yu.

蚩尤被帝擒殺與涿鹿裏<sup>93</sup>

Chi You bei Di qin sha yu Zhuoluli

Chi Yu was defeated and captured by Hwang Ti and executed at a place called (涿鹿裏).

軒轅作內經素問靈樞齣岐伯徹精微發明醫道理後人始得傳疾病沉  
疴起<sup>94</sup>

Xuanyuan zuo neijing su wen lingshu chu qi bo che jingweifaming yidao li  
houren shi de chuan jibing chen ke qi

Hwang Ti Composed a Treatise on Medicine and the Art of Healing, and ever afterwards people were able to diagnose and cure diseases.



伐木作船車水陸皆通濟<sup>95</sup>

famu zuo chuanche shuilu jie tongji

He used wood for making boats and chariots, thereby enabling the people to travel on water and on land.

隸首作算數九章算法起<sup>96</sup>

Li shou zuo suanshu jiu zhang suanfa qi

Ti (隸) was the first to invent the abacus and methods of reckoning (Mathematics).

28

帝遊河洛間魚負天文誌<sup>97</sup>

Di you he luo jian yu fu tianwen zhi

When Hwang Ti was journeying along the Hwang Ho, in the neighbourhood of Loh (洛間) Yu (魚) presented him with a Chart of the stars and a Treatise on Astronomy.

即命師大撓造成花甲子<sup>98</sup>

ji ming shi da Nao zaocheng huajiazi

He immediately ordered Su Ta Lao (師大撓) to compute a "Cycle of Time" (花甲子).

伶倫製竹筒陰陽調律呂遂有管弦聲音樂從此始<sup>99</sup>

Ling Lun zhi zhutong yinyang diaolü lü sui you guanxian sheng yinyue congci  
shi

Leng Lin (伶倫) invented bamboo instruments for the production of the tones (twelve), and music originated therefrom.

采銅鑄鼎成<sup>100</sup>

cai tong zhu ding cheng

Hwang Ti mined for copper for the casting and making of tripods.

騎龍朝天帝在位一百年壽元百十一<sup>101</sup>

Qi long chao tian Di zai wei yibai nian shouyuan baishiyi

He rode upon a dragon and ascended into the presence of God, *i.e.*, he died at the age of 111 years. He ruled for 100 years.

## V. — Yao (Reu)

帝堯陶唐氏仁德宏天地茅茨不剪伐土階爲三級<sup>102</sup>

Di Yao Taotang Shi ren de hong tian dimao ci bu jian fa tu jie wei san ji

Yao (Reu) was renowned for his benevolence and virtue. He lived in a plain thatched palace with three flights of apartments.

莫莢生於庭觀驗旬朔日<sup>103</sup>

mingjia shengyu ting guanyan xun shuo ri

The Ming Keh (莫莢) plant grew near this palace, and on examining it, Yao was able to know the days of the month (i.e. the Four Seasons<sup>104</sup>).

洪水泛九年使禹而疏治<sup>105</sup>

hongshui fan jiunian shi Yu er shuzhi

A great flood desolated the land for nine years, and Yao ordered Yu to drain off the waters.

居外十三春未入家門視<sup>106</sup>

juwai shisan chun wei ru jiamen shi

Yu remained abroad for thirteen years, and all this time he never visited his home.

通澤疏九河引水從東逝<sup>107</sup>

tong ze shu jiu he yin shui cong dong shi

He drained morasses and swamps, dredged and conserved the nine tributaries of the Hwang Ho, and caused the waters to flow eastwards.

舉益治山澤猛獸皆逃避<sup>108</sup>

ju Yi zhi shan ze mengshou jie taobi

He appointed Yi (益) to deal with the forests and jungles, and the wild beasts fled and hid themselves.

百姓樂雍熙擊壤而歌戲<sup>109</sup>

baixing leyong xi ji rang er ge xi

And, henceforth, the people lived in peace and happiness; and they sang, and enjoyed life.

大舜耕歷山堯聞知聰敏二女嫁爲妻<sup>110</sup>

Da Shun geng Lishan Yao wen zhi congming ernü jia wei qi

Ta Shun (大舜) was a farmer of Li Shan (歷山). Yao learnt of his great ability and learning, and gave him his two daughters in marriage.

九男遣奉侍器械並百官牛羊倉廩備事舜畎畝中<sup>111</sup>

jiu nan qian fengshi qixie bing bai guan niuyang cang lin bei shi shun quanmu  
zhong

He also ordered his nine sons to serve Shun, and furnished him with all necessary farming implements and one hundred servants, together with cattle, sheep, and granaries.

取舜歸帝裏<sup>112</sup>

qu Shun gui Di li

Yao subsequently invited Shun to the palace, with the object of appointing him to administer the affairs of the country.

堯老倦於盡四嶽舉舜理堯立百二年一百十七歲<sup>113</sup>

Yao laojuan yu jin si yue ju Shun li Yao li baier nian yibaishiqi sui

Yao, becoming old, was unable to carry on the administration of the country, so he abdicated in favour of Shun. Yao ruled for 102 years, and lived to 117 years.

舜見堯升遐避位南河地<sup>114</sup>

Shun jian Yao shengxia bi wei nanhe di

But, when Yao died, Shun fled from the locality south of the Hwang Ho (so as not to be in the way of Yao's sons.)

31

百姓感舜恩從者入歸市天與人歸之回宮節帝位<sup>115</sup>

baixing gan Shun en congzhe ru gui shi tian yu ren gui zhi hui gong jie diwei

However, the people, being deeply grateful to Shun for his beneficent rule, were anxious to become his faithful and loyal subjects.

Heaven and the people favoured Shun, and so he became Emperor.

## The Origin of the Jews

Yao (堯, i.e. Reu<sup>116</sup>) abdicated in favour of Shun (舜), who in turn, abdicated in favour of Yu (禹).

Yao's grandfather, Chwan Hu Kao Yang (Heber) (顓頊高陽氏) invented a Calender, and fixed the year and the Four Seasons, but, history records very little about his father Ti Kuh Kao Sin (Phaleg) (帝侖高辛氏), as the country was then in the enjoyment of peace. This accounts for the Hebrew Record of the Creation and Deluge being more detailed and accurate than the ancient Chinese Record.

It was after Yao's abdication, and about the year B.C. 2,000, that his great grandson Thare and his family (a small band of nomads) migrated westwards to Chaldea and established the Hebrew nation; and no doubt they were forced to leave China owing to the terribly devastated condition of the Country. Even at 32 the present day there is a Colony of Chinese Jews in Honan (河南).

Yu (禹) journeyed further east to Honan (河南) and Shantung (山東), and founded the Empire of the Hsia (夏) Dynasty (B.C. 2205?<sup>117</sup> to B.C. 1797).

I have abstained from making long and detailed references to the later rulers and events in Chinese History, as I wish to make my message as brief and as clear as possible.

The high morality of China's sages and historians is noteworthy, and is proved by the complete absence of profane and obscene records or references; and Chinese History may be read by children, and the most fastidious persons, without, in any way, hurting their feelings of propriety.

## China's Indigenous Civilization

Having established beyond doubt the real situation of The "Garden of Eden,"<sup>a</sup> and the origin of the Chinese, I will now prove that the civilization of China is indigenous, and distinctly different from all other civilizations, ancient and modern.

---

a. Cradle of the Human Race.<sup>118</sup>

China (ancient)<sup>119</sup> has influenced other civilizations, but has never been influenced by others. In fact, China and its institutions have outlived everything else in the World.

Writers have, in the past, assumed that the Chinese came originally from the West, probably from the Sumerians of Babylon, believing that the similarity between some of the Sumerian and Chinese roots and hieroglyphics was sufficient proof! This theory is contrary to all the known facts, and as I have already stated and proved, the origin of the Chinese is indigenous to the land now occupied by them. 33

The ancient Chinese hieroglyphics are distinctly Chinese, and the evolution from the hieroglyphic stage to the modern script has been continuous. No other dead nation has possessed a similar script. This is proof that the Chinese script is indigenous and not Sumerian.

The Han (漢) Dynasty (B.C. 206) Historical Bas Reliefs of Fuhí, Shen Nung, Hwang Ti, Yao and Shun illustrate the costumes, head-dress, and foot-wear, etc., of the ancient Chinese, and show that they are purely Chinese, and more refined than the costumes of the Egyptians, Assyrians, and Babylonians.

Again, a careful study of the horses, carriages, chariots, etc., are sufficient proof of the high state of China's indigenous civilization at this epoch of her existence as a nation and an Empire.

The "Dragon" and the "Phoenix" are also purely Chinese, and no other ancient nation has similar emblematic representations, unless it has been influenced by Chinese civilization.

Regarding architecture, China, possesses a style distinctly her own. No other ancient nation possessed architecture anything like that of the Chinese. The pointed and tapering roofs and upturned eaves, were no doubt copied from the designs of the tents of their nomadic ancestors, and have been tenaciously adhered to throughout the thousands of years of her existence. 34

The artistic and beautiful bronze and iron temples and pavilions (at least, B.C. 100) on the top of the sacred Taishan (泰山) mountain of Shantung (山東) province are world-famous, and the wonder and admiration of all visitors.

China's Art is also indigenous, and distinctly different in conception, style, and execution, from that of the West, and paintings on silk, representing the civilization, architecture, and historical events of two thousand years of her national life, are still in existence.

I hope I have, now, also, satisfactorily proved the antiquity of China's indigenous civilization.

## Universal Peace and the Brotherhood of Man

The Creation and Deluge are, now, as clear as day, and, in spite of scientists and geologists trying to prove the contrary, and the support which the Darwinian theory of "The Origin of Species" and "The Descent of Man" has been accorded, 35 the truth of the Creation and Deluge has been proved beyond doubt.

And, now, that the Ancient Chinese Record of the Creation and Deluge is found to be the same as Genesis, I fervently hope and pray that, the whole human race will soon learn to believe in God and<sup>120</sup> the Bible, and that, henceforth, men will love and treat each other as brothers.

In conclusion, I fervently beseech all those, who think with me, to work for the following:—

1. Universal Disarmament
2. Universal Peace
3. The protection and civilization of all the weak and savage races of the World
3. The Brotherhood of Man

And, when the nations and governments of the World have reached a state fit to be Federated, I hope and pray that China will take the lead in turning the "Garden of Eden," *i.e.* "Chinese Turkestan," into an "International State," and that the Parliament of Nations will be established there (in China<sup>121</sup>).

*Then will there be Peace on Earth.*

THE END



## Appendix

### Why God Has Punished Europe

This terrible fratricidal war, which is convulsing and devastating Europe, is not due to trade rivalry, mutual fear of aggression, or the ambition of Kings and Emperors to become supreme in this world.

It is the punishment of God for the crimes of Europe.

There must be many ungodly men, to-day, who are blaspheming God, and crying out with uplifted hands—"There is no God. If God exists, why should He make the innocent suffer with the guilty, and, why should Europe be made to suffer so much misery?"

God is a just God, and He rewards the good, and punishes the wicked. If the punishment does not come to-day, it will come to-morrow. But, sooner or later, it is bound to come.

We should always remember that the crimes of the father are visited upon his children, and this applies to nations as well as individuals.

See Exodus XX. 5-6. "God visits the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate Him.

And shows mercy unto those that love Him and keep His Commandments."

The nations of Europe have sinned against God, and broken His Commandments:— 38

1. *Thou shalt not kill*

2. *Thou shalt not steal*

---

a. This text was later published as: Tsan Tai Tse, "The War as a Punishment," Letter to the Editor, *Hong Kong Daily Press*, December 11, 1916,

3. *Thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's house or anything that is thy neighbour's*

If the Christian nations of Europe believe in the Bible, they must acknowledge that Militarism is a crime against God, and that the savages of the World are their brothers.

And, instead of killing and exterminating them in wars of conquest, and robbing them of their possessions, — eventually leading to fratricidal wars amongst themselves, — it is their duty to educate and civilize them, as the negroes of the Southern States of The United States have been educated and civilized, and to place them on the same plane as themselves.

Therefore, the crimes of Kings, governments, and the leaders of men have been visited upon the people, and this is the reason for the punishment which Almighty God has inflicted upon the nations of Europe.

*It is a terrible warning for the future.*

**GENEALOGICAL TABLE**  
 of  
**The Descent of the Chinese from Adam.**  
 According to  
**TSE TSAN TAI.**  
 (安聖謝泰績)  
 25th October, 1914.

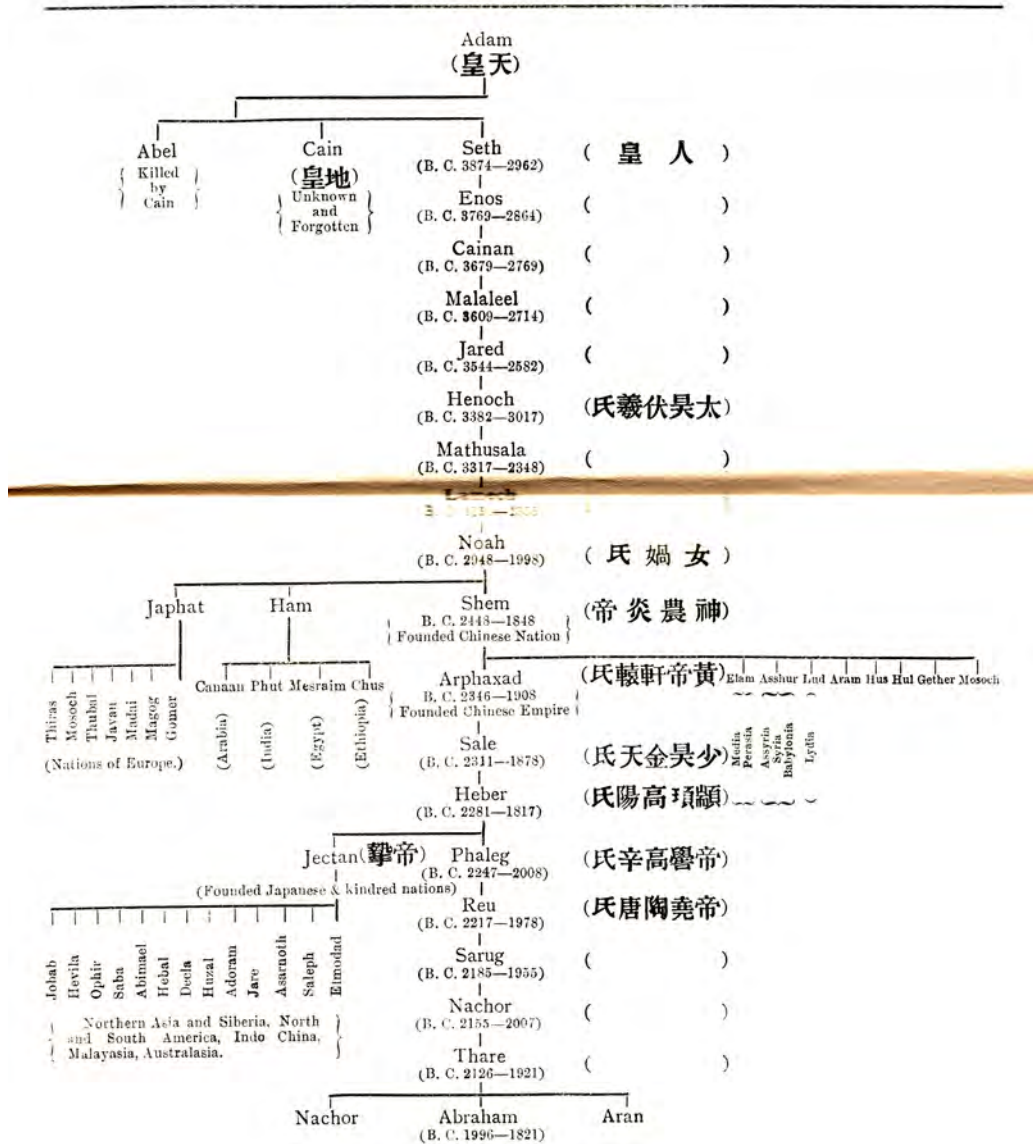


Figure 1.4: Genealogical Table: Descent of the Chinese from Adam. Source: Tsan Tai Tse, *The Creation., the Real Situation of Eden, and the Origin of the Chinese* (Hongkong: Kelly & Walsh, Ltd., 1914)

## Notes

1. On the unpaginated page facing vii, the author has written in red ink: "For further proofs — See supplementary pamphlets No. 1 to No. 49. See author's map of Asia before the great upheaval."

2. The author has underlined the word "translation."

3. The author has erased the word "Eastern" and substituted it with "Central."

4. The author has corrected "in the Bible" to "in God and the Bible."

5. 聖安 Sheng'an was Tse Tsan Tai's 字 zi courtesy name.

6. The author underlined the word "translation."

7. The author has erased the word "Eastern" and substituted "Central."

8. The author has erased the word "Eastern" and substituted "Central."

9. The author has placed the word "ceremonies" in inverted commas.

10. Footnote added by author.

11. The author has erased the word "Eastern" and substituted "Central."

12. The author has added: "and not in Asia Minor."

13. The footnote was added by the author.

14. The author has added: "(China)."

15. Footnote added by author.

16. The author has added "along the shores of the upheaved inland sea"; "Great Khingan Mountains of the"; "'journeying from the East'"; and has underlined the words "plain of Shinar."

17. The author has corrected "Ham" to become "Shem".

18. The author underlined “translation.”
19. Author enclosed “Eden” in quotation marks.
20. Orig.: 張開初地天
21. Orig.: 陽陰辨古盤
22. Orig.: 白卵如形天
23. Orig.: 黃卵如形天
24. Orig.: 物萬生行五
25. The author substituted “sixth” for “seventh”
26. Orig.: 光三運合六
27. Orig.: 紀皇三
28. Orig.: 子二十皇天
29. Orig.: 綱提攝起歲化自而為無郎一十皇地
30. The author added “Including himself” at the beginning of the sentence and substituted “‘brethren’” for “successors.”
31. Orig.: 弟兄九皇人
32. The author enclosed “successors” in quotation marks.
33. Orig.: 長延最命受
34. Orig.: 歲千八萬各
35. The author added “‘full’ moons, *i.e.* months.”
36. Orig.: 邦一興人一
37. Orig.: 疆邊無育發地州九掌分

38. Author added ("Pacific").

39. Author substituted "(Cretan Archipelago)" for "'Atlantis' (?) — Inhabited by primitive man before the Deluge."

40. Footnote added by author.

41. The word "(loess)" was added by author.

42. Orig.: 出以氏巢有

43. Orig.: 糧為始木食

44. Orig.: 室巢為木構

45. Orig.: 襲葉為衣裳

46. Orig.: 方其得飪烹出一氏人燧

47. Orig.: 火改取木纘

48. Orig.: 妨所無食飲

49. Orig.: 事其記繩結

50. Orig.: 詳考難代年

51. Orig.: 揚宣播德聖立昊太羲伏

52. Orig.: 首牛如身蛇

53. Orig.: 章異子容形

54. Orig.: 章成習代後命字制頡倉命

55. Orig.: 獻馬龍圖河

56. Orig.: 陽陰明卦畫

57. Orig.: 將禮為皮儷娶嫁教女男

58. Orig.: 羊豬牛馬畜食庖供牲養
59. Orig.: 爭戰相兵交氏工共融祝
60. Orig.: 崩山周觸頭怒勝不工共
61. Orig.: 驚 (帝) 上
62. Orig.: 穿維地震下折柱 (山) 天
63. Orig.: (山) 天補以石鏈立以氏媧女
64. Orig.: 堅其得勢地極立足鼈斷
65. Orig.: 然依地得 (山) 天水淹灰止聚
66. Orig.: 源根考可不氏五十位傳
67. The author added an opening square bracket by hand.
68. The author added a closing square bracket by hand.
69. The author substituted "Asian (Continental) plateau" for "East Asian plateau."
70. The author substituted "cataclysmic upheaval must" for "upheaval may."
71. The author substituted "leading" for "and."
72. Footnote added by author.
73. The author removed "perhaps" before "due."
74. The author removed "or to changes in the Sun, — the living and life-giving ball of Radium, — ."
75. The author capitalized "Tidal Wave."
76. Author added footnote.
77. The author substituted "North Central Greenland" for "Baffin Bay and North Greenland." The author added "Central."

78. The author added “or the submerged Continent of Polynesia.”
79. The author substituted “Indian races” for “Indians.”
80. The author added “Dravidian.”
81. Footnote added by author
82. Orig.: 立帝炎農神
83. Orig.: 耕民教始其
84. Orig.: 耜耒爲木斲
85. Orig.: 田桑在食衣
86. Orig.: 傳相得藥醫木草嘗口親
87. Orig.: 權橫並物貨易貿爲人教
88. Orig.: 年五廿百五世八凡代傳
89. Orig.: 備完漸事人氏轅軒帝皇
90. Orig.: 起戈乾習適雄爭始侯諸
91. Orig.: 旅軍迷霧作亂作嘗尤蚩
92. Orig.: 敵戰相兵起車南指造帝
93. Orig.: 裏鹿涿與殺擒帝被尤蚩
94. Orig.: 起扇沉病疾傳得始人後理道醫明發微精徹伯岐酌樞靈問素經內作轅軒
95. Orig.: 濟通皆陸水車船作木伐
96. Orig.: 起法算章九數算作首隸
97. Orig.: 誌文天負魚間洛河遊帝
98. Orig.: 子甲花成造撓大師命即



99. Orig.: 始此從樂音聲弦管有遂呂律調陽陰筒竹製倫伶
100. Orig.: 成鼎鑄銅采
101. Orig.: 一十百元壽年百一位在帝天朝龍騎
102. Orig.: 級三爲階土伐剪不茨茅地天宏德仁氏唐陶堯帝
103. Orig.: 日朔旬驗觀庭於生莢莫
104. The author added "(i.e. the Four Seasons)."
105. Orig.: 治疏而禹使年九泛水洪
106. Orig.: 視門家入未春三十外居
107. Orig.: 逝東從水引河九疏澤通
108. Orig.: 避逃皆獸猛澤山治益舉
109. Orig.: 戲歌而壤擊熙雍樂姓百
110. Orig.: 妻爲嫁女二敏聰知聞堯山歷耕舜大
111. Orig.: 中畝畝舜事備廩倉羊牛官百並械器侍奉遣男九
112. Orig.: 裏帝歸舜取
113. Orig.: 歲七十百一年二百立堯理舜舉嶽四盡於倦老堯
114. Orig.: 地河南位避遐升堯見舜
115. Orig.: 位帝節宮回之歸人與天市歸入者從恩舜感姓百
116. Author added "(i.e. Reu)."
117. Author added "2205" before the question mark.
118. Author added footnote.
119. The author added "(ancient)."

120. The Author added "God and."

121. The author added "(in China)."  
“

## Chapter 2

# Supplementary Pamphlets 1-12 (1915–1923)

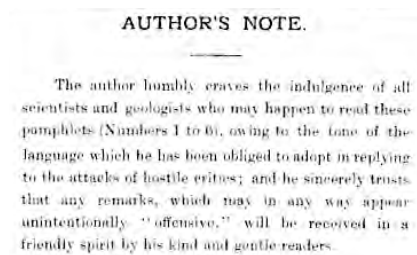


Figure 2.1: A slip Tse Tsan Tai pasted into the first six pamphlets.

**Author's Note:** The author humbly craves the indulgence of all scientists and geologists who may happen to read these pamphlets (Numbers 1 to 6), owing to the tone of the language which he has been obliged to adopt in replying to the attacks of hostile critics; and he sincerely trusts that any remarks, which may in any way appear unintentionally 'offensive,' will be received in a friendly spirit by his kind and gentle readers.

## The Cradle of the Human Race — The Cause of The Deluge and The Change in the Antediluvian Polar Regions — A Reply to “The Japan Chronicle”<sup>a</sup>

### Correspondence

#### The Cradle of the Human Race.

*To the Editor of the “Japan Chronicle.”*

Sir,— I have been shown a copy of the Japan Chronicle, dated 14th November, 1915, containing a lengthy leading article in which the writer has distorted the truths contained in my book, “The Creation; the Real Situation of Eden: and the Origin of the Chinese.”

This hostile critic begins by making a flippant remark about my completing my life’s work in a few days in a book of 85 pages, “whereas most men are inordinately lengthy when they set out to give us the result of their life’s labour.”

In truth, the book is a small one, but it contains *facts, findings, and proofs*, which may help to solve the great problems of mankind. Although I have been an earnest student of Ancient History, Biblical Lore, and Archaeology, it has never been my ambition to write a book on any of these subjects, and I never dreamt that it would be possible to solve the world’s greatest problem or to reconcile the Ancient Chinese and Ancient Hebrew accounts of the beginnings of the Human Race. But, it is a most *remarkable fact* that both accounts agree, as is proved in my book.

However, I hope, shortly, to publish a supplementary work in support of my book under the title “Proofs of the Deluge.” This will be a much larger volume, and will contain geological, geographical, and scientific proofs of the upheaval

---

a. Tsan Tai Tse, *No. 1.: The Cradle of the Human Race: The Cause of The Deluge and The Change in the Antediluvian Polar Regions — A Reply to “The Japan Chronicle”*, Pamphlet [printed by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong], 1915.

and subsidence of continents, and the cause of the flooding of the world by a Diluvian tidal wave.

My critic ridicules the idea of Chinese Turkestan being the Cradle of the Human Race, but he does not mention any of the numerous Biblical, Archæological, and Geographical proofs which I have given in my book. He writes: "From all we have ever heard of Chinese Turkestan we should imagine that the outdoor life in a state of nature would be much more bearable in Mesopotamia." Quite so, but my critic is evidently ignorant of the geological fact that the climate and topography of Asia has changed immensely, since the Deluge. Central Asia, including Chinese Turkestan, has been upheaved some thousands of feet, and, previous to the Deluge, the climate of Chinese Turkestan was sub-tropical and something similar to that of India and South China at the present day. And, instead of being frozen, as it is at present, Siberia and the whole of Northern Asia and Alaska was, then, enjoying a warm and temperate climate. This is proved by the rich alluvial soil, and the total absence of glacial deposits. 2

Regarding my "theory" of the Deluge, he writes: "To get the flood to Turkestan, Mr. Tse has to invent a great tidal wave which swept right round the earth. The wave needs accounting for, and the most natural explanation that occurs to Mr. Tse is a sudden shifting of the Earth's axis. He does not of course, explain how it came to shift, so this only explains one difficulty by creating another."

I intended my explanation to appear in the new volume, but my critic has now obliged me to give him a foretaste of it. It was this great upheaval in Central Asia, followed by the subsidence of large masses of land in the Pacific Ocean and in the Indian Ocean — connecting India with Africa and Australia — that caused the sudden tilt (about 15°) and the shifting of the North Pole from the centre (about Latitude 75°, Longitude 40°) of Greenland to its present position, resulting in the freezing of Northern Asia and the flooding of the world by a gigantic tidal wave.

The Antediluvian Arctic Circle embraced Norway, the greater portion of Sweden and Denmark, Lapland, Finland, Scotland, the North of Ireland, New-

foundland, Labrador, and the North East and North West Territories of Canada up to the Mackenzie River. This is my finding, and it will be an easy matter to verify it. Many riddles of the Glacial Period, which have baffled geologists and scientists, will be fully dealt with and explained in my new book.

- 3 The northern parts of Europe and North America were first flooded by the waters of the Diluvial Tidal Wave, and subsequently by the flood waters of melting ice-fields and vast glaciers.

The action of these glacial floods and torrents of melting ice and snow continued to affect and change the surface and strata of the land, until the gradual and complete disappearance of these ante-diluvain glaciers and ice-fields under the altered climatic conditions. The broken rocks and soil of the highlands were swept into the valleys and lowlands, and this accounts for boulder clays and morainic accumulations being found in the British Islands and Northern Europe — extending South as far as Central France and the Harz mountains in Middle Germany, and in Minnesota, Wisconsin and Michigan of the United States of America.

The extensive Loess deposits of China, which have hitherto been a riddle to geologists and scientists, are not glacial, but are the accumulated deposits of the Diluvian Tidal Wave waters, which flooded Chinese Turkestan and the Mongolian Plateau and turned them into vast Inland Seas. These flood waters gradually escaped towards the sea by way of the Yellow River depression, and this is why China is so marvellously rich in alluvial deposits.

The prevailing theory that these vast deposits of Loess consist of successive layers of fine dust blown and deposited there by the winds (Baron von Richthofen, Pumpelly, and others) is difficult to believe when one considers the thickness (over a thousand feet) and extent of these alluvial deposits. These great terrestrial changes, and the pre-historic civilisations which existed before the Deluge, will be fully explained and described in my Supplementary Work.

Regarding my finding that *Shina* of Genesis is China of the earliest times (the District South of the Yellow River Bend), my critic writes: “we can assure Mr. Tse most positively that it was not, for nobody travelling westward from

either Mesopotamia or Turkestan would arrive at either of these places short of performing something near a circumnavigation."

Instead of quoting me fully, my critic has twisted what I have written into nonsense. Genesis xi. 1–2 says— "and the whole world was of one language, and of one speech. And it came to pass, as they journeyed from the East that they found a plain in the land of Shinar, and they dwelt there." 4

My finding is that after the Deluge, the sons of Noah and their descendants must have left the devastated Tarim Valley District of Chinese Turkestan and journeyed further East in the direction of the Mongolian Plateau, and turning back westwards (journeyed from the East), finally settled (Genesis.— *And it came to pass*) in the plain of Shinar (China), the rich alluvial districts South of the Yellow River Bend, which has been the granary of China from time immemorial. I am positively certain that the ancient word *China*, the origin of which has perplexed so many of the world's greatest thinkers, and which is still a subject of controversy, has been derived from "Shinar" of Genesis.

In future, I hope my critic will play the game, and quote me fully and correctly.

Referring to the Tower of Babel, he writes: "He finds that the Tower of Babel must have been built in Shensi because it was of brick, and Shensi is a province of brick pagodas!" I wrote nothing of the sort, and it is most unjust and unfair to represent me as penning such nonsense. To quote correctly, I wrote: "Ancient ruins exist in the province of Shensi; and strange to say, China is the land of bricks, high towers (pagodas) and strange dialects."

The District Comprising Chinese Turkestan, the Mongolian Desert, Kansu, Shensi, and Shansi will be a rich field of investigation for future archæologists and explorers, and I am of the firm belief that many of the ancient ruins, walls and dykes found there belonged to a civilisation ante-dating the Deluge.

Regarding the descent of the Chinese he writes: "But he seems to think that it is necessary to convert Noah into a Chinaman for this purpose. His real difficulty is evidently that he cannot conceive the Chinese as having descended from alien immigrants."

Further on he writes: “It is evident that Mr. Tse has sufficient pride of  
5 race to make the idea of the Jews being descended from the Chinese much  
more tolerable than that of the Chinese being descended from Mesopotamian  
refugees.”

Allow me to assure my critic that his thoughts and beliefs are wide of the  
mark, and far from the truth.

It is not a question of pride of race.

What I seek to prove is that mankind has originated from the same source,  
and that the Chinese, and likewise the Jews, are of Shemitic or Semitic stock,  
and that both came from the district south of the Yellow River Bend.

Whether what I have written is sound or unsound, I leave the world and  
posterity to judge. — Yours truly,

TSE TSAN TAI

謝 纘 泰

HONGKONG, December 1st, 1915

\*N.B— The geological conditions and glacial deposits of the Antediluvian  
Polar regions, as defined by me in the above letter, prove that the axis of the  
earth has always been inclined, and has never been perpendicular as believed by  
many ancient and modern astronomers and scientists. — T.T.T.



## **Proofs of the Deluge — The Upheaval and Subsidence of Continents, and the Change to the North Polar Regions — A Reply to Alfred H. Crook, MA FRGS<sup>a</sup>**

### **Correspondence**

#### **Proofs of the Deluge**

To the Editor, *South China Morning Post*.

Sir,— Your correspondent, Mr. A.H. Crook, is quite right when he says in his letter in your issue of the 10th inst. that a healthy and profound respect should be had for the great authorities on the various branches of Science, and I agree with him. Your correspondent has mentioned the names of such great and famous men as Sir John Murray, Geikie, Wallace, Sollas, Joly, Richthofen, Merrill, Lapworth, and Salisbury, but with due respect to these great men, they can be right and they can be wrong in their conclusions.

It is not right that we should accept their theories and conclusions as gospel truth. All men have the right to think independently, and to use their own brains instead of being bound hard and fast by the opinions of others, no matter how great they may be in the world of Geology and Science.

*These geologists and scientists are not infallible, opinions and conclusions can only be authoritative, so long as they remain disproved.*

Regarding subsidences of land, your correspondent quotes Sir John Murray as writing— “The study of ocean depths and and ocean deposits does not seem in any way to support the view that continental land has disappeared beneath the floor of the Ocean.” He also says that Sir John Murray’s view is supported by Geikie, Wallace, Sollas, Joly and other great geologists.

---

a. Tsan Tai Tse, *No. 2.: Proofs of the Deluge: The Upheaval and Subsidence of Continents and the Change to the North Polar Regions, a Reply to Alfred H. Crook, MA FRGS*, Pamphlet [printed by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong], 1917.

I am positively certain that a vast continent became submerged by the waters of the Pacific Ocean at the time of The Deluge, and some of my proofs are as follows:—

2 (a) Great architectural works and pre-historic relics, etc., which exist on Mariana Island, Ponape Island, Kusaie Island, Tonga-tabu Island, and Easter Island of the Pacific Ocean, all of which are situated thousands of miles apart. They are a riddle to the natives, who are totally ignorant of the origin of these great works.

(b) The red volcanic clay which covers about 37,000,000 square miles of the central regions of the Pacific Ocean, (The exact situation of the submerged continent). Much of this clay is mixed with blue mud.

(c) It is estimated that over 14,000,000 square miles of the different ocean beds are covered with blue mud. This blue mud has been washed into the oceans by the Diluvian Tidal Wave, which engulfed and flooded the different continents of the world.

For further geological, glacial and ethnological proofs, I must refer your correspondent to my coming book, as too much cannot be written in a newspaper controversy of this nature.

Regarding the origin of the Hwang Ho (Yellow River Valley) loess, your correspondent writes,—

Then again your correspondent puts the loess as a water (“diluvian”) deposit. Again, the geologists — Geikie, Richthofen, Merrill, Lapworth, Salisbury, etc., — are against him. The practically universal opinion of geologists is that the loess is a wind deposit.

Is it possible, I ask, for dust to be carried by the wind and deposited in the Valley of the Yellow River (an area of over 400,000 square miles), Russian Turkestan and Siberia, the Rhine Valley, the Colorado Valley, and the Mississippi and Amazon basins, etc., to a varying thickness of one thousand feet?

*Such a theory is impossible of belief.*

How many thousands or millions of years would it take for wind-blown dust to accumulate in such vast areas one thousand feet in thickness? And, again,

where does the dust of these different localities come from, and why has it been blown and deposited in one particular spot? Surely this dust has not been attracted to these different localities by a mysterious magnetic influence!

In my humble opinion the loess of Asia, Africa, South America and Australia is a Diluvial deposit, and the extensive loess deposits of the Yellow River Valley have been washed and deposited there by the Diluvial waters which flooded the highlands of Chinese Turkestan and Mongolia. The loess of North America and Europe consists of, — 3

1. Glacial deposits
2. Diluvian deposits
3. Deposits of flood waters of melting glaciers and ice-fields

In the absence of evidence proving that this vast deposit of loess in China was glacial, and failing to discover proofs of a Universal Deluge, these Geologists and Scientists must, finally, have concluded that it was a wind-borne deposit.

This disbelief in a Universal Deluge, and the upheaval of Central Asia and the subsidence of a large mass of land in the Pacific Ocean, formerly connecting China with Easter Island, has led to many wrong geological and scientific conclusions, and to the miscalculation of the age of these loess deposits, and also the age of skeletons of animals and prehistoric man found buried in them. *I am afraid Geology and Ancient History will have to be re-written.* Generations of geologists and scientists have obstinately adhered to the belief that the world has never been flooded by a Deluge, and the reason for this disbelief is that they have never been able to discover and prove scientifically that the world was flooded by a Tidal Wave caused by the upheaval and subsidence of large masses of land.

A careful study of the land contour and geology of the provinces of Kwang Tung, Kwang Si, Kweichow, Yunnan, Szechuan and Kansu, Mongolia, Chinese Turkestan, Tibet, Burmah, Northern India, Afghanistan, Russian Turkestan and Siberia will prove the extent and nature of the upheaval which has taken place.

I am not theorizing as your correspondent seems to think, and allow me to assure him that my discoveries and findings are the result of *serious study and* 4

*research*, and do not need “bolstering up” (I use his own words) by impossible theories.

*I am dealing with facts and realities.*

In the flooding of Asia “a great wave X miles high” (I use your correspondent’s own words) was not necessary, as the land must have become inundated as it got convulsed and upheaved.

I have never said that the polar axis changed its position.

I said that the Earth underwent a list of about 15 degrees, changing the Ante-diluvian North Polar regions from the centre of Greenland (Latitude 75° and Longitude 40°) to their present position.

A careful study of the geological conditions of Labrador and N.W. Canada (glacial), Northern Asia (non-glacial), and N.W. Europe (glacial), will prove this.

The non-glacial condition of the soil of Siberia proves that Northern Asia once enjoyed a Temperate climate, but has become suddenly frozen; and the carcasses of mammoths also prove that these extinct animals were drowned by the Deluge and preserved by the sudden freezing of their bodies. The reconciliation of Science and Religion hinges on the question whether the world has been flooded by the Deluge, and the solution of this great question will remove the barrier which at present exists between Science and Religion, and solve the geological and glacial (Glacial Period) “riddles,” which have so long baffled the geologists and scientists of the world.

Thanking you for the courtesy of finding space for this reply,

TSE TSAN TAI

謝 纘 泰

HONGKONG, 10th Nov., 1917.

## Correspondence

*To the Editor, South China Morning Post.*

5 Sir,— In a letter of your issue of the 9th, your correspondent blames me

“for having given such little thought to what I have written.” I do not think his further remarks on me justified the charge. The first thing a study of these subjects ought to, and I think would, produce in the student is a healthy and profound respect for the great authorities on the various branches of science involved.

Our greatest authority on the oceans of the earth, Sir John Murray, writes: “The study of ocean depths and ocean deposits *does not seem in any way to support the view that continental land has disappeared beneath the floor of the ocean*” (the italics are mine). And again “the deciding stroke appears to have been delivered in favour of the permanence of the ocean basins.” Geikie, Wallace, Sollas, Joly, and a host of the other great geologists support the same view.

Then again your correspondent puts the loess as a water (“diluvian”) deposit. Again the geologists — Geikie, Richthofen, Merrill, Lapworth, Salisbury, etc., — are against him. The practically universal opinion of geologists is that the loess is a wind deposit. I have looked at the loess in both Europe and Asia, but I do not even pretend that had I spent as many months as I spent days in examining it that my opinion would be worth a straw and to be quite candid I don’t think Mr. Tse Tsan-tai’s would either. The question involved geological and other knowledge quite beyond me. But it would require a great deal of evidence to outweigh the consensus of existing geological opinion.

When a theory before it can be accepted requires, as Mr. Tse’s does, to be bolstered up by the pushing up and sinking again of a great continent in the Pacific; the occurrence of a great earthquake which raised the land of Asia 10,000 feet; the inundation of a great wave X miles high; to say nothing of a new polar axis for the earth — I say when a theory requires to be bolstered up with such views as these it ought to be accepted with great caution, And when almost the unanimous verdict of the great authorities is that none of these things happened, then it ought to be accepted with several grains of salt. I said nothing about the probable birth place of man or the cradle of civilization. Authoritative opinion is much divided. Darwin seemed to think it possible that man was not all from a single stock. Pritchard thought our primal ancestors were black. At present

it is only safe to say that three oldest specimens of mankind (pithecanthropus, erectus and eoanthropus) come from Java, Piltown and Heidelberg.

Yours etc.,

A.H. CROOK

HONGKONG, Nov. 9th , 1917.

## Correspondence

### Proofs of the Deluge

*To the Editor, South China Morning Post.*

7 Sir,— I was greatly interested and pleased to read in THE CHINA PRESS, of October 28th, Dr. W.H. Ballou's illustrated article describing the recent discoveries made by the lady explorer, Mrs. Scoresby Routledge, M.A., on Easter Island, because they help to verify my finding that Easter Island and its prehistoric relics are the remains of a sunken continent — the "Land of Nod" mentioned in The Bible. (See Page 9 of my book "The Creation: and the Origin of the Chinese," published by Messrs. Kelly and Walsh, Limited, Hongkong, Shanghai, Singapore and Yokohama.)

This sunken continent extended from Easter Island (its most Eastern promontory) to China, embracing all the scattered islands of Polynesia and Melanesia, most of which are mountain tops and extinct volcanoes.

The coral islands or "Attols" are the craters of extinct volcanoes around the lips of which the coral polype has succeeded in building up a ring of coral walling in a lagoon of fresh water.

Owing to the volcanic nature of these islands, strong ethnological evidence exists that there has been more than one subsidence of land since The Deluge.

The wonderful architectural works and prehistoric relics which exist on Mariana Island (Ladrone Islands), Ponape Island (Caroline Islands), Tonga-tabu (Tonga Islands), which are situated thousands of miles apart, are also the remains of the prehistoric civilization of this sunken continent. And what is more

convincing, the natives of these islands are absolutely ignorant of the origin of these great works.

This vast continent, which formerly divided the Pacific into two oceans (North and South), was first convulsed by a great earthquake, and then submerged at the time when the whole of Central Asia (Chinese Turkestan, Northern India, Tibet and Mongolia) was upheaved some ten thousand feet, resulting in the Earth's sudden list of about 15 degrees, and the changing of the position of the North Pole from the centre of Greenland (about Latitude 75° and Longitude 40°) to its present position followed by a tidal wave which engulfed and flooded all the continents of the world. 8

Geological proofs of the change in the position of the North Polar regions, and the flooding of the world by a Diluvian Tidal Wave will appear in the Chinese Edition of my book ("The Creation: and the Origin of the Chinese"), which I expect to see published at the end of this month. Owing to business engagements, I very much regret that the English Edition of my supplementary work "Proofs of the Deluge," cannot be published at the same time.

I have carefully studied the specimen of hieroglyphic writing found by Mrs. Scoresby Routledge, and I find that the construction of these characters is similar to the ancient hieroglyphic script.

I firmly believe that these hieroglyphic writings of Easter Island have sprung from the same source as those of China, viz., the hieroglyphic script of Tsang Chi.

I hope further excavations and investigations will be made in Easter Island, and that results will help to prove the truth of The Deluge.

I also hope that systematic excavations will be made in the extensive Diluvian Loess deposits of the different provinces of the Yellow River Valley of China in which are buried one thousand feet below its surface great cities and relics of the Ante-Diluvian Age, which will surprise and astonish the archaeologists and ethnologists of the World, and prove that mankind originated in Chinese Turkestan, and that civilization had its birth in China.

TSE TSAN TAI

謝 纘 泰

HONGKONG, Nov. 6th, 1917.



## **The Real Situation of "Eden" — Proofs of the Deluge and the Great Upheaval of Central Asia. Origin of Loess deposits, Salt Lakes, Salt Marshes & Deserts — A Reply to The Roman Catholic Encyclopaedian Society of Macao<sup>a</sup>**

### **Correspondence**

#### **The Real Situation of "Eden"**

To the Editor, *South China Morning Post*.

Sir,— I am more than delighted to read in your issue of the 16th inst. the long letter which has been addressed to you by the Encyclopaedian Society of Macao, whose members consist of Chinese and Portuguese Roman Catholics. The statement— "We have craved him in private correspondence to prove his statements, but he has been unable to do so," is preposterous. It was on the 18th December, 1917, that I received a lengthy communication from Padre Philip van Lao, President of the Encyclopaedian Society, requesting me to answer a number of questions regarding my location of the "Garden of Eden."<sup>b</sup> As a matter of courtesy and friendship, I did not grudge the little spare time at my disposal to answer his questions, in the belief that my doing so would be appreciated, and I even received from Padre Lao the following lines as a sort of encouragement.— We believe Eden to be on one of the mountain chains — 'backbone of the globe' — viz., Himalaya, Kuen Lun and Tien Shan, as the traces show well to our careful survey. God bless you: this is our wish." Later on, however, I discovered, after putting certain questions to this Society, that Padre Lao and his friends had been endeavouring to trip me. In reply to certain of my questions Padre Lao wrote on

---

a. Tsan Tai Tse, No. 3.: *The Real Situation of "Eden" — Proofs of the Deluge and the Great Upheaval of Central Asia — Origin of Loess deposits, Salt Lakes, Salt Marshes & Deserts: A Reply to The Roman Catholic Encyclopaedian Society of Macao*, Pamphlet [printed by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong], 1918.      b. *The Cradle of The Human Race*.

the 20th March last, as follows:

We locate Eden at the “Roof of the World” but not at Chinese Turkestan as you. *N.B.*— Our secrets cannot be revealed to other persons before the publication of our book and maps, you must know. We repeat, all the secrets of our Society about Eden and Chinese Origin, etc., cannot be revealed to other persons, except after these persons want to enter our Society. Therefore you must excuse me if I do not tell you our things, especially being secret ones, before our book is published.

- 2 After the receipt of the following amazing threat of the 28th March last, I declined to answer any further questions from this Society and challenged Padre Lao and his friends to come out and “fight” in the open.

Padre Lao wrote on this date as follows:—

The Portuguese friends of ours are composing their publication to refute you, and we hope that their pamphlets may be published soon. Since you decided it better to question in a public way instead of giving a satisfactory explanation to them who cannot understand your things, you will excuse worse consequences.

No doubt my refusal to continue this controversy in private has led to the publication of this attack. To prove that I am wrong in locating the “Garden of Eden” in Chinese Turkestan, the Encyclopaedian Society quotes from L. Richard’s “Geographie de l’Empire de Chine” (French), and remarks as follows:—

This, his principal finding, cannot be true, because Chinese Turkestan was submerged by water at the time of the Creation, most clearly in the primitive era of this earth, consequently also in the epoch of God’s plantation of Eden until long after. To prove this it is enough to study the Geography, Geology, and Ethnology at ancient times by the great authors, especially see L. Richard’s “Geographie de l’Empire de Chine”?

Is L. Richard infallible? But, I am not surprised to see the members of this Society accepting his teachings as the gospel truth. I very much regret that I am not a French scholar, and, consequently, I am unable to deal with L. Richard's theories and findings in this letter. I do not deny that the land, at present known as Chinese Turkestan *might have been submerged at the time of the Creation*, as it is very problematic, and such a theory has supporters with opposite views, but, I do most emphatically deny that this land was submerged, when the whole earth was covered with vegetable and animal life at the time of the creation of man by God. I am dealing with *facts*, and this is proved beyond a shadow of doubt by the immense Diluvial loess deposits of China, South-western Siberia, and Russian Turkestan, and by the remains of extinct animals, reptiles, birds and prehistoric man (I am not using scientific names), which have been found buried therein. All this loess was swept and carried into the lowlands by the waters of the Diluvian Tidal Wave, which flooded and filled up the two upheaved Chinese Turkestan and Gobi (Mongolia) basins and gradually escaped by way of the Yellow River depression, the Zungarian Trench, and other depressions leading to the lowlands of Siberia. All my discoveries and findings are proved by the Bible (Genesis,) Ancient Chinese History, Geology, Archaeology, the discoveries of explorers, and the results of the sounding of the different Ocean beds by the Challenger and other expeditions. 3

I have already proved the fact of the upheaval of Central Asia and the submersion of large masses of land in the Pacific and Indian Oceans in my reply to Mr. A.H. Crook, MA., FRGS, published in your issue, of 12th November, 1917, and, I will not tire your readers by going over the same ground again. As the members of this Society are evidently deeply soaked in the erroneous theories and findings of past generations of geologists and scientists, I am not the least surprised that they should express themselves as follows:— "The upheaval of the Roof of the World has not been noticed by any Geologist, Archaeologist, Ethnologist, or Geographer except Mr. Tse Tsan Tai!"

Is it just because I differ from all the World's greatest Geologists and Scientists that I am wrong? It must be proved that I am wrong, and if it cannot be

proved that I am wrong, then I must be right.

When I say that “the religious ceremonies of the Thibetan Buddhistic Church and the Roman Catholic Church have spring from the same *source*,” I mean that both have sprung from the *Original Religion of God*, the God of Moses and the Ancient Chinese. History tells us that the Ancient Chinese and their Forefathers worshipped God from the time of The Creation up to the Chow Dynasty (B.C. 255), Lao Tze and Confucius worshipped God, and it was during the Han Dynasty (A.D. 67), when Buddhism was first introduced into China from India by the Emperor Ming Ti, that the Chinese began to get demoralized and to forsake their pure and ancient Religion of God. I am strongly of opinion that  
3 all the Religious Books and ancient Chinese Records of The Creation were either burned or destroyed by Emperor Chin Chi Whang Ti (B.C. 221).

Christianity is far different from Buddhism as everybody knows, and I have made no reference to the tenets of these two religions.

Historically, geographically and geologically, the Tarim River with its four tributaries, (1) the Khotan River with its extension the Ganges River (*Oxus*), (2) the Yarkhand River with its extension the Indus River (*Gihon*), (3) the Kashgar River with its extension the Oxus River (*Hiddekel*), and (4) the Aksu River with its extension the Jaxartes River (*Euphrates*), is the “River with four heads” of the “Garden of Eden” of Genesis II-10-14. These four great historical rivers or “heads” have been cut in twain by the upheaved mountain chains, which wall in Chinese Turkestan on the North, South and West. At the present day, the River Tarim and its four tributaries flow Eastward, but, before the Deluge and the great upheaval of Central Asia, this river and its four “heads” flowed Westward, as is shown in my detailed map of Eden before the Deluge. This great upheaval and the severance of these four great rivers by the upheaved mountain chains, is proved by the discovery of numerous ancient dried up water courses, and the prevailing geological conditions of the surrounding country, which all point to upheavals and physical changes of recent date.

In conclusion, I will now prove by the Bible (Genesis) that The Deluge was caused by a Tidal Wave, and that Central Asia was upheaved and then flooded

by this Tidal Wave. When reading and studying Genesis, it will not do to think and reason superficially. Certain chapters are so brief and mysterious, that they cannot be read and understood literally. God has blessed man with intelligence far higher than that of the brute creation, and, therefore, man should think and reason carefully, when trying to fathom and understand the mystery of God's work as recorded in Genesis.

In determining the question of the truth of the Creation and the Flood as recorded in Genesis of the Bible, it is necessary:

*Firstly*, to prove historically, geologically and scientifically that the whole world was flooded by a Deluge, and to prove scientifically the cause of this Deluge. 5

*Secondly*, to locate the locality where Noah and his sons dwelt, and the mountains on which the Ark rested, when the waters of the Deluge began to subside.

*Thirdly*, to discover in what part of the World was a large body of Diluvial water impounded, and which necessitated its taking 3870 days (see Genesis) to escape ... "to continually return from off the earth" as recorded in Genesis VIII-3.

*Fourthly*, to prove geologically and scientifically that such a place exists, and that it actually took months and days for the impounded water to escape.

These four questions have all been solved by me in the English and Chinese editions of my book. Genesis VII-11 says:— "In the six hundredth year of Noah's life in the second month the seventeenth day of the month the same day were all the fountains of the great deep broken up and the windows of heaven were opened." Are not the words "*all the fountains of the great deep were broken up*" God's words for conveying to The World His meaning that the Flood was caused by a great Tidal Wave, and does this not prove that this great Tidal Wave was caused by a Great Earthquake and the upheaval and subsidence of immense masses of land?

Genesis VII-18 says: "And the waters prevailed and were increased greatly upon the earth and the Ark went upon the face of the waters." Does not this refer to the action of the Tidal Wave, when flooding the great basins of Chinese

Turkestan and Gobi (Mongolia), and turning them into a vast inland sea upon the bosom of which the Ark must have floated till it rested on the Narat (Ararat) Mountains of Tien Shan, after the waters escaped and began to subside.

Genesis VII-20 says: "Fifteen cubits upward did the waters prevail and the mountains were covered." Does not this refer to the onward rush of the devastating waters of the engulfing Tidal Wave?

Genesis VIII-3 says: "And the waters returned from off the earth continually."

Genesis VIII-5 says: "And the waters decreased continually."

- 6 Genesis VIII-14 says: "And in the second month the seven and twentieth day of the month was the Earth dried." Does not this refer to the gradual escape of the Tidal Waters impounded in the Chinese Turkestan and Gobi basins?

It took 370 days for these Flood waters to escape, and does this not prove that Gobi (Mongolia) were flooded by the Tidal Wave, and that this is the identical locality recorded in Genesis? This terrific earthquake, which upheaved Central Asia and submerged a vast continent in the Pacific Ocean, is responsible for the rending of mountains and the creation of the wonderful mountain and river gorges of Asia. Valleys and ravines must have been filled in by the debris, of land slips, and whole forests entombed and subsequently covered up by successive layers of the mud and slime of the Tidal Waters, which flooded Asia and were impounded by the upheaved mountain basins of Turkestan and Gobi (Mongolia). A study of the geology of the highlands, and the mountain chains, which border and surround these two districts, will prove the extent and nature of the upheaval. The salt deserts, marshes and lakes of Chinese Turkestan and Mongolia, are proofs of a vast Post-diluvian Inland Sea, which has since dried up. The lowlands of Asia must have been in a most devastated condition after the Deluge, being covered with mud and slime and innumerable Lakes and seas of salt water. These lakes and seas gradually dried up in the course of time, and thus have been formed the salt deserts, marshes and lakes of the different continents of the World. The mud and slime of the highlands of Chinese Turkestan and Mongolia were swept into the Yellow River valley, Southwestern Siberia and Russian Turkestan, forming

the the vast accumulations of fertile loess, which exist there at the present day. Such vast accumulations of loess, particularly in the Yellow River valley, where it covers an area approximating 400,000 sq. miles, is positive proof that Central Asia was upheaved and flooded by a Tidal Wave.

After the Deluge, all that stretch of land from the Caspian Sea to Chinese Turkestan in the East and the Obi delta in the north was turned into a great Inland Sea, and this sea must have barred the way from Central Asia to Asia Minor and Europe for many centuries of the Noarchian age. At this time, Mosopotamia and the surrounding country must have been covered with mud and slime and in a terribly devastated condition. Therefore, Noah and his descendants could not have been in the mountains of Armenia at the time of The Deluge, as the Tidal Wave must have destroyed and swept everything from off the the surface of the land of Armenia and Asia Minor. In face of such positive statements of fact, Biblical and otherwise, how is it possible to reconcile the finding that the Mountains of Armenia are the Mountains of Ararat mentioned in Genesis? Where in Armenia or Asia Minor could any large volume of water be held in check for 370 days to return from off the Earth continually? 7

It must now be clear to all thinking men that these plain and clear statements of Genesis refer to the Tidal Wave waters of the upheaved basins of Chinese Turkestan and Gobi (Mongolia). Note the words "And the waters returned from off the earth continually" Genesis VIII-3. Does this not mean that the waters escaped gradually and continually by way of the Yellow River depression, the Zungarian Trench and other depressions leading to the lowlands of Siberia? Is it possible for the whole earth to be covered with water? And, again, how is it possible for such a volume of water to return continually from off the earth, and leave the Land dry in 370 days?

This is proof positive, if we we are to believe Genesis, that Noah's Ark rested on the Narat Mountains of Tien Shan, and that the Nurat Mountains are the Mountains of Ararat of Genesis, and, also that Noah and his descendants were established in the great plain of the Yellow River Valley of China (Shinar), previous to the Confusion of Tongues, and before God scattered them abroad

upon the face of the Earth, Bs Thanking you for the insertion of this letter in your valuable columns.— Yours truly,

TSE TSAN TAI

謝 纘 泰

HONGKONG, 17th, April, 1918.



**China in the Time of the Deluge — Origin of the Crustaceans of Taihu Lake of China. — China The “Shinar” of Genesis — Why the Ancients of The West Failed to Discover China — A Reply to Notes of the Royal Asiatic Society<sup>a</sup>**

**China in the Time of the Deluge**

**Well-known Writer Deals with Royal Asiatic Society’s Notes on Crustaceans — China The “Shinar” of Genesis**

*Reprinted from the “Shanghai Times,” dated 4th July, 1918*

In the report of the annual meeting of the Royal Asiatic Society published in your issue of the 14th June, there appears the following statement regarding certain Crustaceans, which have been found in the Taihu Lake of China:—

Another new species of crustacean, the *Rhynohoplax introverous*, is remarkable in that this species of this marine genus was obtained in the fresh waters of the Taihu Lake and *may be a survival of the time when it was part of the Sea.* (The Italics are mine.)

As the result of my studies and research work in connection with the geology and physical geography of China, I find that no part of China has emerged from the Sea (Pacific Ocean). I find on the contrary, however, as already proved in my books (“The Creation; and the Origin of the Chinese,” (English Edition, published by Kelly and Walsh, Limited, Hongkong, Shanghai, Singapore and Yokohama. Chinese Edition, published by the Tsun, Wan Yat Ito, Co., Hongkong.) and pamphlets (a) A Reply to the *Japan Chronicle*; (b) A Reply to Mr.

---

a. Tsan Tai Tse, No. 4.: *China in the Time of the Deluge — Origin of the Crustaceans of Taihu Lake of China — China The “Shinar” of Genesis — Why the Ancients of The West Failed to Discover China: A Reply to Notes of the Royal Asiatic Society*, Pamphlet [printed by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong], 1918.

A.H. Crook, M.A., FRGS.; (c) A Reply to the Roman Catholic Encyclopaedian Society of Macao, that (1) Central Asia has been upheaved, (2) that the ancient sea-board of China and a large mass of land extending from China to Easter Island, has sunk in the Pacific Ocean, and (3) that Asia and the other Continents of the World have been flooded by a great Tidal Wave — the Tidal Wave of *The Deluge* of Genesis caused by the great upheaval and subsidence of land, and the change in the Polar Regions: (Antediluvian) from the centre of Greenland (about Latitude 75°, Longitude 40°) to their present position.

Before this great upheaval and subsidence of land took place, and before this  
2 great Tidal Wave swept around the World and engulfed the different continents, the Continental Coast-line of China extended as far as the Loo Choo Islands and Formosa.

The intervening land has since become submerged, and what is now the Lake districts of Hunan, Hupeh, Kiangsi, Nganhwei, Chekiang, Kiangsu and Shantung was at one time a great Inland Sea formed by the Tidal Wave waters (Diluvian), which flooded Asia (B.C. 2348). This sea formed by the Tidal Wave waters (Diluvian) gradually dried up, and the waters of the lakes which exist at the present day have become fresh through the great volumes of fresh water, which have been discharged into them during the past 4,000 years.

Thus are the presence of marine crustaceans of the *Rhynohoplax introverous* species in the fresh waters of the Taihu Lake accounted for, and, as I have already said, the Taihu Lake has never been a part of the Sea (Pacific Ocean), as stated in the Report of the Royal Asiatic Society.

Not only were these lake districts of China formerly a great Inland Sea, but the Takla Makan (Chinese Turkestan), Gobi or Shamo (Mongolia), Aral-Caspian, and Obi depressions were also vast Inland Seas formed by the Diluvian Tidal Wave waters, which flooded the whole of the Asiatic Continent. (See "Note" on page 80.)

And this leads me to explain the reasons why the ancients of the West always drew their maps of the World in an oval shape with a single range of mountains running East and West through the Middle, and, also why they were

unable to discover the existence of China (Shinar of Genesis) and the Chinese.<sup>a</sup>

Running East and West through the Old Maps of Eratosthenes (B.C. 225), Strabo (B.C. 25), Pomponius Mela (A.D. 50), Dionysius Periegetes, and Ptolemy (A.D. 150) may be noticed a range of mountains called "Taurus Mons," extending from Asia Minor in the West and along the North of India to an imaginary point in the East.

On reaching the foot of the Hindoo Koosh mountains, where this chain 3 meets the Pamir Plateau and the Himalayan system of mountain chains, it appears that the ancient explorers travelled along the foot of the Tien Shan system of mountain chains till they reached the Altai: Mountains and the frozen wilds of Siberia in the North, and along the foot of the Himalayan system of mountain chains till they reached the massive mountain system running South through Burmah to the extremity of the Malay Peninsula in the South. The ancients failed to find the base (Pacific) of the triangle. Not being able to climb or cross these formidable and awe-inspiring mountain chains, they evidently mistook the two great mountain systems to be the one and same chain of mountains! And, this is why only one long chain of mountains appears in their maps.

It is, therefore, clear that it was (a) this triangular wedge of mountain chains with the apex in the Pamir Plateau, (b) the Altai Mountains and the terrible Arctic cold of Siberia, and (c) the vast and terrifying expanse of Indian Ocean, which shut out all knowledge at existence of the ancient civilization of the Chinese from the ancients of the West, and prevented them from discovering the existence of China and the Chinese, until the Chinese themselves made their civilization known to the West through their conquests in Turkestan in B.C. 100.

It appears that the Country known to the ancient Greeks as "Seres" represents the modern Zungaria, and it does not refer to China, as is generally believed at the present day.

Being ignorant of the Science of Trigonometrical Surveying, and being confronted in the North of Europe and Siberia by the terrible Arctic cold, the Arctic

---

a. It appears that all trace of the Chinese (Shem's descendants) was lost to the West, after the *Confusion of Tongues* and the great dispersal of Ham and Japhet's descendants from the Yellow River Valley District of China.

Ocean, and the vast Aral-Caspian Inland Sea, the triangular wedge of massive mountain chains of Central Asia in the East, and the vast expanse of the Atlantic and Indian Oceans in the West and South, the ancient navigators and geographers of the West naturally assumed in their ignorance that all the land then known, to them as constituting the World was oval in shape and surrounded by the waters of the great unknown!

### Note

3 For further proofs of:—

1. *The Deluge*
2. Upheaval of Central Asia
3. Climatic changes due to the sudden freezing of Northern Asia and Siberia by the change in the (Antediluvian) North Polar Regions
4. The flooding of the upheaved basins of Chinese Turkestan and Mongolia by the Tidal Wave waters of *The Deluge*

See Sir Aurel Stein's vivid description of the wind-eroded clay terraces (meshas), wastes of dried up salt marshes. and lagoons, dessicated bare salt-impregnated and salt-encrusted clay deposits and desert drift sand, numerous ancient river courses, remnants of groves of drowned ancient poplar trees of the ancient riverine jungle occupying the banks of a dried up river (River of "Eden"), and extensive Chinese fortifications (Han Dynasty B.C. 104), constructed of the trunks of these dead poplar trees and thick layers of stamped clay (Loess) of the Lop-nor District of Chinese Turkestan.

(See the New York Geographical Review of January, 1920).

The Theory of L. Richard and other geologists and scientists, that *Chinese Turkestan was submerged by the Sea at the time of the Creation, most clearly in the Primitive Era of this Earth* being still unproved, is, therefore, wrong.

Before the great upheaval of Central Asia, and *The Deluge*, the Lop-nor District ("Garden of Eden" of the Bible) must have been a beautiful Tropical

country watered by a sparkling river wending its way amidst verdant plains and thick groves of tall and graceful poplar trees.

T. T. T.

## **Truth of the Bible and the Dean of Lincoln's Disbelief — Historical, Geographical & Scientific Proofs of the Truth of the Biblical Record of Eden and the Flood<sup>a</sup>**

### **Truth of the Bible and the Dean of Lincoln's Disbelief**

*Reprinted from the "Hongkong Daily Press," of April 30th, 1919.*

Sir,— It must be intensely disconcerting to churchmen and the Christian world to know of the Dean at Lincoln's disbelief in the Bible story of Eden and the Flood.

I have read with profound regret the following report of the Dean of Lincoln's confession of disbelief at an animated discussion which took place in the Lower House of Convocation, on February 15th:—

The Dean of Lincoln said the retention of the allusion to the Ark put in his mouth at the most solemn moment of the service an historical statement concerning a story he simply did not believe. ("Oh, oh.") They knew the origin of the story, and from where it was borrowed. ("No.") The prophetic mind took it as it took the earlier story of Eden. He believed in the evolution of divine truth in the Old Testament, but if they asked if he believed in the Eden story, as representing the origin of mankind, he said he did not, nor did he believe in the historical truth of the Flood." (See *Hongkong Daily Press* of April 9th, 1919).

It is such utterances, particularly from the mouth of a prominent churchman, which retard the work of God in this World, and which cause perplexity and confusion in men's minds. How can we prevent the Bible from being openly

---

a. Tsan Tai Tse, *No. 5.: Truth of the Bible and the Dean of Lincoln's Disbelief: Historical, Geographical & Scientific Proofs of the Truth of the Biblical Record of Eden and the Flood*, Pamphlet [printed by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong], 1919.

attacked and considered as a book not to be quoted in a civilized society, after this?

Are we to accept the Bible as the book of God, or are we to treat it as unworthy of belief, as does the Dean of Lincoln?

The Dean of Lincoln must be totally ignorant of the existence of geological and scientific facts proving the historical truth of the Flood, and doubtless this is responsible for his indiscretion. 2

Consequently, I will now prove to the Dean of Lincoln that the Bible story of the Flood is not a myth, but a fact supported by history, science, and geology.

I have already proved in my books and pamphlets by incontestable historical, geological, and scientific facts: —

- (a) That the Bible story of Eden and the Flood are historical facts. This is proved by comparing Genesis with Ancient Chinese History
- (b) That the Flood was caused by a gigantic Tidal Wave, which flooded all the continents of the World, smothering and drowning mankind and all the gigantic mammals, etc. This is proved by the skeletons, etc., found embedded in the deposits of loess of the different continents.
- (c) That this Tidal Wave was caused by the great upheaval of Central Asia, and the subsidence of the Pacific continent, extending from China to Easter Island, and embracing all the scattered islands of Polynesia. This is proved by the massive stone architectural remains, which have been discovered on islands separated thousands of miles apart, and by the deep-sea soundings of different expeditions.
- (d) That the sudden upheaval and subsidence of such large masses of land caused the Earth to make a plunge of about fifteen degrees, which changed the Antediluvian North Polar regions from the centre of Greenland (about Latitude 76deg. and Longitude 40deg.) to their present position. This is proved by a study of the deserts, ancient water-courses, and geological conditions of the highlands of Central Asia, the Eastern seaboard of China,

and the existing glacial and geological conditions of Northern Europe, Labrador, North-east America, and Newfoundland.

- 3 (e) That there has only been two great Glacial periods, viz. (1) Antediluvian, and (2) Post-Diluvian, and that there has never been an “Ice Age,” which enveloped the whole of the Earth in a mantle of ice. This is proved by the total absence of geological traces of a Glacial period in Asia, Africa, Central and South Americas, and Australia and the scattered islands of Polynesia. The only genuine geological traces of a Glacial period are those to be found in Northern Europe and North-east America; and all climatic and geological changes, variations, and erratic formations have been due to the Tidal Wave, and flood waters of melting glaciers and ice-fields, caused by the sudden change (about 15 degrees) in the Antediluvian Polar regions.
- (f) That all the continents of the World were peopled before the Flood. This is proved by Antediluvian architectural remains discovered in Crete, Egypt (pyramids and sphinx) and Central Africa, Central and S.E. Arabia, Baluchistan, the United States, Central America, and Polynesia.
- (g) That the Eastern portion of Chinese Turkestan (Lob Nor district) is the “Eden” of Genesis and the Cradle of the Human Race. This is proved by the location of the *River with four heads* (The River Tarim and its four tributaries) of Genesis. The four heads are (1) Ganges (*Oxus*), (2) Indus (*Gihon*), (3) Oxus (*Hiddekel*), and (4) Jaxartes (*Euphrates*), which were joined to the four tributaries, viz., (1) Khotan, (2) Yarkhand, (8) Kashgar, (4) Aksu, of the River Tarim of Chinese Turkestan, before their severance by the great upheaval of Central Asia. Lake Nob Nor is the fount or source of the river of “Eden” mentioned in Genesis.
- (h) That China is the “Shinar” of Genesis. This is proved by Ancient Chinese History, which states that Noah repaired the devastated Tien Shan district, and drained off the flood waters of the highlands.
- 4 After the Flood, Noah’s descendants journeyed along the shores of the



vast Inland Sea, which occupied the upheaved Chinese Turkestan and Mongolian basins (now the Mongolian Desert), starting from the foot of the Narat Mountains of Tien Shan (Mountains of Ararat of Genesis), and proceeding Eastwards in the direction of the Great Khingan Mountains (“Sephar, a mount of the East”—Genesis); and from thence (The East — Genesis II.2. “And it came to pass, as they journeyed from the East, that they found a plain in the land of Shinar; and they dwelt there.”) they journeyed West into the great plain of the Yellow River Valley district of China (Shinar), where they dwelt and multiplied till the time of the “Confusion of Tongues,” when God scattered them abroad upon the face of the Earth.

It appears that after the “Great Dispersion,” the descendants of Shem, Ham, and Japhet lost trace of each other for about two thousand years.

I will now explain why they lost trace of each other, and why “Eden” (The Cradle of the Human Race) has been erroneously located in such places as (1) Armenia, and (2) Mesopotamia.

When the tribal ancestors of the Jews migrated from the Yellow River Valley District of China (Shinar) to dwell in Chaldea, about 350 years after the Flood, and about 200 years after the “Confusion of Tongues,” subsequent generations of the Chaldean Jews lost all trace of China (Shinar), owing to the existence of the vast Aral-Caspian Inland Sea, the ice and cold of Siberia, the massive and awe-inspiring mountain chains of Chinese Turkestan, Tibet, and India, and the wide expanse of the Indian Ocean, which barred their way for close on two thousand years!

Later generations, imagining that Mesopotamia and Asia Minor was the Whole World, the country being, then, completely surrounded by impassable seas, vast salt lakes, deserts, and formidable mountain chains, therefore, erroneously located “Eden” and all the places and rivers mentioned in Genesis, (Chapters I to IX), in this little pent-up corner of Western Asia. They were totally ignorant of the existence of other vast continents. Could they have made a greater mistake?

*And this is the mistake, which has confused and bewildered the World for thousands of years.* 5

Full particulars of my discoveries and findings will appear in my supplementary work.

According to the great geologists and scientists of the World, the Bible story of the Flood is a myth, and loess is considered by them to be a wind-blown deposit, and to be millions of years old.

I will now prove that they are wrong.

The loess of Europe, Asia, Africa, America and Australia is not millions of years old, as has been generally taught and believed. It consists of the accumulated alluvial deposits of the Tidal Wave waters, and the flood-waters of melting icebergs and ice-fields (Northern Europe and North-east America), and is, at most, 5,000 years old.

Not being glacial, how is it possible for such vast deposits to be wind-blown?

Where did the dust come from, and how was it blown and deposited in the mountain valleys and river basins of the different continents of the world as if attracted there by a magnet?

Loess is, therefore, clearly and unmistakably a water-borne deposit.

The erroneous belief that it is a wind-blown deposit is responsible for the glacial, geological, and ethnological riddles, which are still perplexing the minds of the World's geologists and scientists.

The Dean of Lincoln may not believe in the Bible story of Eden and the Creation, but I cannot agree with him, as I am firmly of the belief that there is more truth in the Bible story than in the theory of the Life Germ (Moneron) and Human Evolution.

If we are to believe in the theory of the Life Germ and Evolution, the natural corollary must be that Evolution should be continuous and progressive, and not stationary or jumpy. Now, I ask what super-man has been evolved during the last 5,000 years of our history? Scientists encourage us by saying that we might have  
6 to wait another million years! Where is the "missing-link" between the monkey and man? Has there ever existed a race of monkey-men with man's intelligence and reasoning powers, and capable of speech and the making of written signs?

I am afraid the "Life Germ" and the "Missing-link" are only the inventions

of baffled scientists. I have heard it said that the German "Hun" was the coming "super-man." If such is the case, may God be pleased to preserve us from such super-men!

Such a theory does not hold water, and is, therefore, absurd.

In my humble opinion, mankind is degenerating physically and morally, and will continue to degenerate, until men and women return to God.—Yours, etc.,

TSE TSAN TAI

謝 纘 泰

HONGKONG, April 28th, 1919.

**Loess and the Deluge — Chinese Turkestan, the Cause of Upheaval and Subsidence of Continents, Change in North Polar Regions, and Sudden Freezing of Northern Asia — Fallacy of the Ice Age — A Reply to Mr. A.H. Crook, M.A., FRGS<sup>a</sup>**

**Correspondence**

**The Cradle of the Human Race**

*To the Editor of "The Hongkong Daily Press."*

Sir,— I am glad to see in to-day's issue of your paper that my old antagonist, Mr. A.H. Crook, M.A., B.Sc., FRGS, etc., has dared to enter the arena again under the initials "A.H.C." and I am very pleased to meet him.

My answer to Mr. Crook's questions are all contained in the five Supplementary Pamphlets of my book, and I do not wish to trespass on your valuable space or to bore your readers by repeating what I have already written. Perhaps it may interest your readers to know that in answer to numerous requests, I have at last, decided to publish these pamphlets, which I originally intended to reserve as material for a future volume.

I think, however, that I ought to reply to certain of your correspondent's remarks regarding the truth of The Deluge, the origin of Loess, the freezing of Northern Asia, and the so-called "Ice Age."

Although Mr. Crook has confronted me with a formidable array of authorities, I certainly disagree with the geological and scientific theories and suppositions of the authorities quoted by him, because they conflict with History, Science and Religion; and it was this bewildering conflict of theories and suppositions,

---

a. Tsan Tai Tse, *No. 6.: Loess and the Deluge — Chinese Turkestan the Cradle of the Human Race — Cause of Upheaval and Subsidence of Continents, Change in North Polar Regions, and Sudden Freezing of Northern Asia — Fallacy of the Ice Age: A Reply to Alfred H. Crook, M.A., FRGS*, Pamphlet [printed by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong], 1920

which led me to devote my leisure hours to serious study and research.

I do not believe in theories and suppositions, because *an ounce of fact is worth a ton of theory*.

Mr. Crook quotes the theories and suppositions of famous authorities against me, but are his authorities right? Can he prove that they are right?

I have proved all my discoveries and findings by historical, scientific and geological facts. Can Mr. (Crook substantiate the theories and suppositions of his authorities by facts? I defy him to do so. 2

Mr. Crook, who is evidently a faithful pupil and follower of the famous scientists quoted by him, does not believe in the truth of The Deluge, and supports his disbelief by the indiscreet opinions of the Dean of Lincoln; but how, I ask, do Mr. Crook's authorities account for the origin of the Salt lakes, marshes and deserts of the highlands and lowlands of Europe, Asia, Africa, America, and Australia? Are they not the evaporated and dessicated remains of vast seas of salt water which smothered and drowned vegetation, and which were created by the Diluvian Tidal Wave as it swept round the Earth and engulfed the different continents? Can Mr. Crook prove that their origin is otherwise?

Mr. Crook quotes Sir John Murray) as his authority for disbelieving that there has been a subsidence of a large mass of land in the Pacific Ocean. If, in accordance with Mr. Crook's authorities, there has been no great subsidence of land in the Pacific Ocean, how do he and his authorities. account for the origin and existence of the massive stone architectural remains on the following Island groups of Polynesia:—(a) Mariana Island; (b) Ponape Island; (c) Kusaie Island; (d) Tonga-tabu Island; (e) Easter Island; (f) Marquesas Islands? All these islands are separated from each other by thousands of miles of the Ocean, and the savages of these islands ave totally ignorant of the origin of these wonderful relics of an Antediluvian Civilization. A study of the geology of these Island groups and the Eastern sea-board of China all prove subsidence. And, again, how do Mr. Crook and his authorities account for the 37,000,000 square miles of red volcanic clay in the central regions of the Pacific Ocean covering the site of the sunken continent located by me? Are not these convincing proofs of subsidence,

following a great terrestrial convulsion? Recent geological observations in Central Asia all point to upheaval; and the great and depressions of the Tien Shan district of Turkestan, and the Great Rift Valley, extending from the canyon of the Jordan and Dead Sea through the Red Sea across Abyssinia to Lake Rudolph through  
2 British East Africa, and down the Shire Valley to the Indian Ocean, are all proofs of this great catastrophic convulsion which upheaved Central Asia, cracked and changed the surface of the Earth, and submerged a continent.

Mr. Crook still obstinately adheres to his belief that Loess is a wind-borne deposit. If the vast deposits of Loess in the Yellow River Valley District, of China (about 400,000 square miles in area and in places about 1,000 feet thick), Siberia, Russian Turkestan, Rhine Valley (about 800 feet thick), Nile Valley, Colorado River Valley, Mississippi Basin, Amazon Basin, and the Liverpool Plains and Darling Downs of Australia are not water-borne (Diluvian) as, proved by me, can Mr. Crook and his authorities satisfactorily explain and prove that these vast deposits of Loess consist of wind-borne dust? Where was the dust blown from and how was it deposited in these different areas?

This theory of wind-borne dust is impossible and absurd.

Again, great "pockets" or deposits of bones of wild horses and other rare Ante-Diluvian mammals have been unearthed in the Loess of Solutre in Burgundy (Europe), Agate, Sioux Country, Nebraska (United States), the plains of Australia, and other parts of the World.

Are not these deposits of bones proof of *The Deluge*, and were not these animals drowned, swamped together, and then deposited in these places by the whirling waters of the Diluvian Tidal Wave? Can Mr. Crook prove that it is otherwise? So far, scientists have not been able satisfactorily to account for the origin of these "pockets" of bones, because they have not been able to prove the

truth of *The Deluge*.<sup>a</sup>

Mr. Crook does not believe in the shifting of the Ante-Diluvian Polar Regions, but if he will forget his authorities and devote a little time to the careful independent study of the geological and glacial conditions of Labrador, Newfoundland, the Lake District, the North West Territory of Canada, Scotland, North of Ireland, Norway, Sweden, Denmark, North Germany, Northern Russia and Nova Zembla, he will find that the area affected by the shifting of the Polar Regions from the Centre of Greenland to their present position to the North of Asia is about 15 degrees. 4

It was this sudden advance of the cold towards Northern Asia, caused by the great upheaval of Central Asia and the subsidence of a large mass of land, in the Pacific Ocean, which suddenly froze the land and the carcasses of extinct mammoths, which were drowned by the engulfing waters of the Diluvian Tidal Wave, and preserved them up to the present day, And, this sudden freezing of Northern Asia also accounts for the frozen loess and gravel deposits or "islands" of the goldfields of the the Lena District of Siberia, which are still a riddle to the geologists and scientists of the World. These deposits of loess and gravel were swept into their present positions by the Diluvian Tidal Wave waters and then frozen hard by the sudden cold, and they have also remained in this frozen 5

---

a. The Piltdown skull (Sussex, England) is not 500,000 years old, as taught and believed by the leading geologists and scientists of the World, And, it is quite evident that this famous skull, and likewise the Calaveras skull (America), Heidelberg skull (Germany), and the human remains and bones of huge mammals discovered in the ravines of Chapadmalal and Miramar in Argentina (South America), were swept and deposited with the loess in their original positions by the Tidal Wave waters of The Deluge, and, therefore, cannot be more than 5,000 years old. This Tidal Wave also accounts for the hitherto unexplained riddle of the strange intermixture of northern and southern forms in European loess deposits, where the remains of Arctic animals have been found side by side with those of African Species. It also accounts for the finding of the remains of the African hippopotamus, &c., in Yorkshire (England), and explains the erratic *Pliocene* deposits of bones of extinct mammals and human remains, which have been found in other odd and strange places of the World, where they have been carried and deposited by the Tidal Wave, which engulfed and flooded all the Continents, travelling from South East to North West, West, in its passage round the World.

condition up to the present day. The geological conditions of the rocks and soil, and the vegetation of Northern Asia all point to its once having enjoyed a Temperate climate, and is not this proof absolute that Northern Asia became suddenly frozen, and not slowly, as supposed by Dr. A.R.

INXPWWallaceWallace, Alfred Russel1823–1913, one of Mr. Crook's authorities?

Since the Earth came into existence as a molten ball of matter and gradually cooled, commencing from its two Polar extremities, there have only been two great Glacial Periods, that previous to The Deluge and the change in the North Polar Regions, lasting probably millions of years, and that after The Deluge up to the present day, affecting about 15 degrees of certain portions of the land surface of the Northern Hemisphere of the Earth. The whole Earth has never at any time of its existence been covered with a Mantle of Ice as erroneously supposed and believed by many geologists and scientists, and this is clearly proved by the total absence of glacial conditions in Asia, South America, Africa, Australia and the Islands of Polynesia.<sup>a</sup>

I confidently believe that my discoveries have solved the glacial and geological riddles, which have hitherto baffled the geologists and scientists of the World. Mr. Crook attempted to ridicule and belittle my discoveries in the beginning, but, if he will forget that I am a Chinese seeker after truth, and relieve his biassed mind of its stock of impossible theories and suppositions, and: carefully investigate my discoveries and findings, which are all supported by historical, geological, and scientific facts, I am sure he will find that I am right and that all his authorities are wrong.

---

a. The extinct mammoth is not an Arctic animal, as has been universally taught and believed by geologists and scientists. Many of these animals were drowned, frozen hard and preserved in the ice and snow by the sudden freezing of Northern Asia; and this sudden freezing of Northern Asia (Siberia) and Alaska, and the sudden withdrawal of the Arctic cold from the Mackenzie River District and the North Eastern portions of North America, and the North Western parts of Europe,— due to the change (list of about 15 degrees) in the Antediluvian North Polar Regions (Latitude 75° and Longitude 40°), — explodes the erroneous belief in an Ice Age," explains and exposes the fallacy of the four "Great Ice Ages," and solves the *Glacial* and *Pliocene* riddles, which have been baffling generations of the world's great geologists and scientists.



Having pointed out the way and switched on the searchlight of truth, it will now be a simple matter for Mr. Crook and other scientists to verify and confirm my discoveries and findings, which I hope will eventually lead to the reconciliation of History, Geology, Science, and Religion. — Yours truly,

TSE TSAN TAI

謝 纘 泰

HONGKONG, March 26th, 1920

## Correspondence

### The Cradle of the Human Race

*To the Editor of the "Hongkong Daily Press."*

Sir,— The summary in your columns of a lecture by Prof. Elliott Smith has given Mr. Tze Tsan Tai an opportunity to state again his theories about the Cradle of the Human Race and his suppositions of catastrophic geological and other changes. A detailed refutation of Mr. Tse's six "facts" would occupy more of your space than the subject warrants. A brief reference to current scientific opinion is all that is possible.

(a) Chinese Turkestan is put as the cradle by Mr. Tse. Modern opinion is so much divided and the evidence is so scanty that, at best, the authorities only hazard a guess.

(b) Mr. Tse's second, "fact" is a Tidal Wave which travelled round the world and engulfed the continents. This is the Deluge. But in recent years even the clergy are questioning the truth of the Deluge. Mr. Tse may remember that he wrote to the paper criticising the views of a bishop or dean of the church of England who dared to say that modern evidence was against such a belief. 7

(c) Mr. Tse says there was "the subsidence of a large mass of land in the Pacific Ocean extending from China to Easter Island, which is proved beyond doubt by the massive stone architectural remains which exist on several of the island groups," etc.

Sir John Murray, our greatest authority on the depths of oceans says:—

“The study of ocean-depths and ocean-deposits does not seem in any way to support the view that continental land has disappeared beneath the floor of the ocean in the manner just indicated.”

Mr. Tse some years ago wrote to your contemporary and, if my memory serves me rightly, mentioned some of the discoveries of Mr. and Mrs. Routledge on Easter Island to support his case. It may be well therefore to state the opinions of these authorities on Easter Island in reference to theories like Mr. Tse’s. “We may dismiss,” says Mrs. Scoresby Routledge, “the vague suggestion that the archeological remains in the island survive from the time when it was part of a larger mass of land. Whatever may be the geological story of the Pacific, no scientific authorities are prepared to prove that such stupendous changes have taken place during the time which it has been inhabited by man.”

Mrs. Scoresby Routledge further tells us that she met a geologist in the Pacific who was studying this very question. He had a dispute with a biologist about it. The biologist wanted “land bridges” to account for the presence of land snails on some of the islands. The geologist’s explanations. did not satisfy him. “Anyhow” said the geologist finally, “to have the floor of the ocean raised  
8 up fifteen thousand feet, for his snails to crawl over, is just too much.” And it is just too much also to raise it up fifteen thousand feet to allow Mr. Tse to get Shem, Ham and Japhet over dryshod.

(d) The shifting of the Ante-diluvian polar regions is Mr. Tse’s next “fact.”

Some have supposed that in the past there have been great changes of this kind. But thus far no evidence of any considerable displacement has appeared. (“Manual of Astronomy,” Prof. Young p. 83).

(e) Mr. Tse next brings forward the loess as a water deposit and a proof of the Flood. “There are few deposits of any age the characters of which proclaim its nature and origin more clearly than those of the loess. In structure, composition, distribution, and fossil contents it exhibits all the characters of subaerial wind-borne deposit.” (“Quaternary Ice Age,” Wright, page 197).

(f) The last “fact” is the Ice Age. The subject and the literature on it are voluminous. Authoritative scientific opinion may be found in Dr. A.R. Wallace’s

“Island Life” or in the volume on the Ice age mentioned above. I should like to question Mr. Tse’s “sudden freezing.” Mr. A.R. Wallace speaks of the process as “slow”: he also estimates the duration of the glacial epoch as nearly 200,000 years.

I have tried to state the opinions of our best scientific authorities on the points raised by Mr. Tse. They are almost unanimously flatly against him.

Finally it may be well to mention what readers of his books will know, that Prof. G. Elliot Smith seems to say nothing in his books to countenance any of Mr. Tse’s “facts” *b, c, d, e, or f*,—Yours, etc.,

A. H. C.

HONGKONG, March 25th, 1920

## Correspondence

### The Cradle of the Human Race

*To the Editor of the “Hongkong Daily Press.”*

Sir,—I was much gratified to read in to-day’s issue of your valuable paper the article under the heading “Birthplace of Primitive Man,” which helps to support my discovery that Chinese Turkestan in the Central Asian Plateau is the Cradle of the Human Race. 9

This article gives the gist of Professor Elliott Smith’s lecture at the Royal Institution on “The Evolution of Man and the Early History of Civilization””; and regarding the location of the place where primitive man first came into existence, he said:—

It was probably somewhere in the region of Asia between India and China, that primitive man came into existence. He was a wanderer on the face of the earth. Until he became civilized and a cultivator there was nothing to fix him in one spot.

Having made a very careful study of Ancient Chinese and Jewish (Genesis) history, I find that the primitive ancestors of man first saw the light in the then Tropical Lob Nor district of Chinese Turkestan, and I also find that, after escaping

the engulfing waters of the Tidal Wave of the Deluge, Noah and his descendants found themselves in the upheaved Tien Shan district of Chinese Turkestan, from whence they started their wanderings leading to the re-peopling of the World.

It is also noteworthy that the Central Asian Plateau is the home of the wild horse, ox, camel, ass, sheep, goat, dog, etc.

In support of my discovery, I have already proved in my book, "The Creation; The Real Situation of Eden" (i.e. Cradle of the Human Race) and the Origin of the Chinese, and Supplementary Pamphlets (5) by historical, geological, and scientific facts the following:—

- 10 (a) Chinese Turkestan is the Cradle of the Human Race.
- (b) The truth of The Deluge, and what caused the Tidal Wave which travelled round the World and engulfed the different continents.
- (c) The Great Upheaval of Central Asia, and the subsidence of a large mass of land in the Pacific Ocean extending from China to Easter Island, which is proved beyond doubt by the massive stone architectural remains, which exist on several of the island groups of Polynesia, and are separated from each other by thousands of miles of the Ocean.
- (d) The shifting of the Antediluvian Polar Regions from the centre of Greenland to their present position, caused by a sudden plunge of the Earth and a list of about 15 degrees.
- (e) The origin of the Salt Lakes and deserts, and the extensive Loess deposits of the different Continents of the World.
- (f) The cause of the sudden freezing of Northern Asia, and the reason why the frozen carcasses of the extinct mammoth have been so well preserved in the ice and cold of Siberia. (N.B.—The flesh of these mammoths, which have been dead for thousands of years, can still be used as food for dogs!)

My books and pamphlets have been welcomed most cordially by the Great Universities and Geographical and Scientific Institutions of Europe and the United

States, and I confidently await further confirmation of the truth of my discoveries and findings.

TSE TSAN TAI

謝 纘 泰

HONGKONG, March 22nd, 1920

## Birthplace of Primitive Man

### “Between India and China”

That man has a common origin with the monkey, the ape, and the gorilla 11  
was the thesis of Professor Elliott Smith’s first lecture at the Royal Institution  
on “The Evolution of Man and the Early History of Civilization.”

It was the sense of vision, touch, and hearing the lecturer said, which gave  
the mammal domination over all other primitive creatures, The gradual develop-  
ment of these senses and other faculties of the brain could be traced from the  
Miocene period to the anthropoid apes and to man. Of all the mammal man  
had best preserved the primitive construction of his remote ancestors. He repre-  
sented the particular group of primates which had never been compelled to turn  
aside from natura] development. Others, like the gorilla and the gibbon, had  
developed special characteristics of strength of limb or agility to avoid extinction.  
*It was probably somewhere in the region of Asia, between India and China, that  
primitive man came into existence.* He was a wanderer on the face of the earth.  
Until he became civilized and a cultivator there was nothing to fix him in one  
spot.

See “Hongkong Daily Press” of March 22nd, 1920.

## Mr. Tse Tsan Tai’s Discoveries

*Reprinted from the “Hongkong Daily Press” Hongkong, 7th April, 1920*

Sir, It is futile for Mr. Crook to continue bolstering up his erroneous theories  
and suppositions by sarcastic remarks, and by authorities who are wrong.

I have asked him to prove that I am wrong, and to substantiate the theories and suppositions of his authorities by facts, but, so far, he has failed to do so.

Is Mr. Crook aware that American geologists and scientist are busy investigating my discoveries, particularly that of the Sunken Pacific Continent, and that Professor William A. Bryan, who holds the Chair of Zoology and Geology in the College of Hawaii, just discovered further evidence and proof of this Sunken Continent in the similarity of the shape of little fresh-water moluscs, which he discovered on the island Juan Fernandes, with species found upon Hawaii? (See Dr. W. H. Ballou's Illustrated Article re Sunken Pacific Continent in the Shanghai "China Press" of March 21st, 1920.)

If Mr. Crook will only have a little more patience, he will very soon read and learn much that will convince him of the truth of my discoveries.

Yours truly,

TSE TSAN TAI

謝 纘 泰

### **Acknowledgement**

The author takes advantage of this opportunity in recording his most grateful thanks to the great explorers of the past for having unconsciously acted as his deputies. These brave men saw and came across things, which they could not understand, and which they found to be nothing but riddles and secrets, whereas, to the author they have served as important and valuable geological and scientific facts, supporting and proving the truth of his discoveries.

## **Solution of “The Dark Mystery of the East” and The Origin and Age of Ancient Human Bones of the Valley of Mexico City<sup>a</sup>**

### **Correspondence**

#### **“The Dark Mystery of the East”**

*To the Editor of “The Hongkong Daily Press.”*

Sir, — I have read with considerable interest the article in your issue of the 28th instant, by H.D. Marriott Watson, headed “Dark Mystery of the East.”

Mr. Marriott Watson asks the following questions:—

Why do all our ills and all our blessings come from the East? — Why do all our religions come from the East? — Why do most of our fruits come from the East? — Why do our pheasant and fowls come from the East? — Why does all civilization come from the East?

To Mr. Marriott Watson the mystery of the East is insoluble. He writes :—

After all, the puzzle remains. — Why does everything come from the East? Is it the swirl of this Earth westwards? Is it the sun? Is it the Moon? — Or is the solution to be found in the infinite solitudes of space? — No one can tell.”

In reply to Mr. Marriott Watson’s queries, kindly permit me to assure him that the solution of the mystery lies in the fact that mankind and civilization originated in Chinese Turkestan (Central Asia) and not in Asia Minor or the Euphrates Valley as taught and believed by the leading historians, archaeologists, scientists and geologists of the world. I have already proved in my books and

---

a. Tsan Tai Tse, *No. 7.: Solution of “The Dark Mystery of the East” and The Origin and Age of Ancient Human Bones of the Valley of Mexico City*, Pamphlet [printed by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong], 1921.

pamphlets (6) (Kelly & Walsh, Limited) by historical, scientific, and geological facts that mankind and civilization originated in Chinese Turkestan, and doubtless Mr. Marriott Watson will be interested to know that the great American Scientific Expedition with G.\$80,000,000 at its back, which has been despatched by the American Asiatic Society to carry out a five years' mission of investigation and research in Central Asia, has already arrived in China under the leadership of Dr. Roy Chapman Andrews; and I venture to hope that this expedition will be able to verify the truth of my discoveries and findings (1914), which are the result of some twenty years of serious study and research.

TSE TSAN TAI

謝 纘 泰

HONGKONG, April 28th, 1921

## Ancient Human Bones of Mexico

### A Problem Solved

*To the Editor of the "China Mail."*

Dear Sir, — I notice in your issue of the 9th instant under the heading "Ancient Human Bones." that ancient bones of human beings have been found beneath a bed of lava in the valley where stands the City of Mexico.

The article contains the following statement: —

How old are the bones? It is a question nobody can answer. — They may be 1,000 or 10,000 years old. — There is no historical record of the volcanic eruption which made the lava bed. — Undoubtedly it occurred a very long time before Cortez visited the Capital of Montezuma.

Will you kindly permit me to make the following observations, which may help to solve the riddle?—

A careful study of the geological conditions of Mexico, the West India Islands, and the different Island groups of Polynesia together with their Prehistoric



3 architectural remains, prove conclusively that the volcanic eruption which created the lava bed that destroyed life in the Valley of Mexico City, took place at the same time as the great terrestrial convulsion, which upheaved Central Asia and submerged a continent in the Pacific Ocean. This great upheaval and subsidence of land caused a tidal wave which travelled round the earth and destroyed all Ancient civilizations, and this is why no historical record exists amongst the natives of Mexico. It is therefore safe to fix the age of these human bones at no more than 5,000 years.

In order to prove that the Prehistoric civilization of Mexico was suddenly wiped out of existence, it is important to remember the significant fact that the Prehistoric civilizations of Asia Minor, Susa, Babylonia, India, China, and South America, Polynesia, etc., were also *suddenly ended* and wiped out of existence at a time synchronizing with the Deluge of Genesis.

This is the riddle that has confused Ancient History, and bewildered and confounded the great geologists, historians and archæologists of the world, and the *sudden ending* of Ancient Civilization, and hitherto *inexplicable gap* in the Old and New civilizations of all modern nations is proof of the destruction of all Prehistoric Civilizations by the Tidal Wave of the Deluge.

Consequently, the different Continents were re-peopled after the Deluge and this is why there has been so much confusion in accounting for the origin of Prehistoric remains, and why no historical record of their origin can be found.

The history of these dead Prehistoric civilizations been a closed book and has still to be written, but now that the truth of the Deluge has been established, it will be possible to unravel the complicated tangle and solve the mystery of ages.

TSE TSAN TAI

謝 纘 泰

HONGKONG, May 10th, 1921

## Ancient Human Bones

### Found Under Lava Bed

*Extract from "China Mail" of Hongkong. Dated 9th May, 1991.*

- 4 In the valley where stands the City of Mexico and almost in the outskirts of that metropolis, the ancient bones of human beings have been found beneath a bed of lava.

The discovery is rather exciting. Many years ago a considerable sensation was caused by the alleged finding of human remains beneath a lava bed in California, under conditions which seemed to indicate that they were of almost unbelievable antiquity; but, unfortunately, the affair proved to be a fraud and a fake.

In this case, however, there is no doubt whatever of the fact. Tunnels have been driven several hundred feet beneath the lava bed, and the bones, found in several places, have not been removed.

Instead, they have been saturated with silicate of lime to harden and preserve them, and have been placed in glass cases exactly where the diggers came across them, so as to be viewed by anybody who may be interested.

How old are the bones? It is a question nobody can answer.

They may be 1,000 or 10,000 years old.

There is no historical record of the volcanic eruption which made the lava bed.

Undoubtedly it occurred a very long time before Cortez visited the Capital of Montezuma.

## What Was the Colour of Our Primitive Ancestors? — The Real Mountains of Ararat<sup>a</sup>

### Correspondence

*To the Editor of "The Hongkong Daily Press"*

Sir, — I was much interested to read Mr. G.N. Orme's interesting lecture on "The People of China" appearing in your issue of the 6th inst. The following remark by Mr. Orme contains the key to the unlocking of the problem of the great and ever-recurring racial question:— "We shall soon be much nearer together nationally and racially, than we have been."

If all thinking men will remember this, instead of stirring up race-hatred by agitation and publishing dangerous books and newspaper articles, we may yet hope for some world-stirring decisions by the Washington Conference, leading to a better understanding between the nations assembled together to-day.

Mr. Orme again refers to the colour bar as follows:—

The most insuperable difference is the colour bar. We feel, and partly acquire, a feeling of contempt for people who are not so pleasantly bleached as we are ourselves. With a view to making it easier I would like to recall you to our ancestors. I won't take you to the Ice Age because you will find it rather cold, but I will take you back to the pleasant when mankind first found it possible to subsist without getting into caves, — when Civilization began to dawn. These days must have been passed in some warm, tropical climate and, whether we are all one family or not, I think there was not very much to choose between us in point of colour. We were pretty well browned, if not blackened, by the sun. Subsistence became difficult and we outsiders — because it appears that the negro is a rather higher type than ourselves — had to begin moving north and south to a colder

---

a. Tsan Tai Tse, *No. 8.: What Was the Colour of Our Primitive Ancestors? The Real Mountains of Ararat*, Pamphlet [printed by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong], 1922.

2 climate and we began to lose that delightful colour which we now associate naturally with the negro. We became that nasty bleached colour which we see among ourselves to-day, some who went north, like the Chinese, also lost their black colour, but not going into misty climate, they chose the rather yellowish colour we see and not the dull white we acquired and are now so proud of. If you are “top-dog” you can make anything you have got a subject for pride but if is not sufficient ground for despising other people. We must look for some more solid ground of superiority than mere colour.

It must be most delightful and exhilarating to Universal Peace workers to see Mr. Orme expressing himself in this strain, and let us hope that there will be plenty of others to follow in his foot-steps.

The races of Russia and Southern Europe are already thoroughly mixed and blended, and you have colours ranging from dull white to brown and even the black of the Negroes; and many have the facial characteristics of the Mongolian Tartars! Therefore, why discriminate now ?

In the interests of Universal Peace and the Brotherhood of Man, I think we should encourage this mixing and blending of the different races, as it is the only way to solve the difficult and distressing race and colour problems, which confront us to-day. If we believe in God the Creator, this is the proper course to pursue.

But, I do not mean indiscriminate mixing, or that a highly cultured white should marry an ignorant and savage black.

Regarding the Chinese, I think it is a fallacy to call them the *yellow* race. You will find in North China to-day many Chinese quite as white and with classical features equal to those of any European. The colour of the Chinese varies from white o different shades of brown, but it is never *yellow*.

In reality the Human Race now consists of three distinct colour divisions, *viz.*, *white*, *Brown* and *Black*. All other colours are merely blends.

I cannot agree with Mr. Orme that our original ancestors were black in colour, and that the negro is a higher type than the whites and browns. Intellectually

and morally the black race cannot compare with the white and brown races. But, of course, there are rare exceptions.

The existence of the black race, with its frizzled hair and calfless legs is one of the inscrutable mysteries of God. They are undoubtedly Hamitic in descent, and does not the Bible teach — “Cursed be Canaan; servant of servants shall he be unto his brethren”?

And, does not the Bible also teach — “Blessed be the Lord God of Shem; and Canaan shall be his servant;” and also “God shall enlarge Japhet, and he shall dwell in the tents of Shem; and Canaan shall be his servant.” And has not all this come true to-day?

Most of the black races (Negroes, negritos, dravidians, etc.), are still savages and of poor mentality, and it does not appear likely that they will ever become the equals of their Shemitic and Japhetic brethren in intelligence and learning.

The descendents of Japhet (white races) are at present in occupation of North and South America and Australia (“The tents of Shem,”) but they should always remember that the Shemites are the original owners of the land and that they should welcome and treat them as brothers. It appears that Almighty God has given the Hamitic races their black pigments thick skulls, and frizzled hair so as to keep them distinct from all the other races of the world. And no doubt this is why intermarriage between blacks and whites is fraught with such disastrous results. It is impossible to have a graded blend of black and white and vice versa. And no matter how you cross blacks and whites, the ugly black is always the predominant colour. Black can never be blended and changed into white by marriage or climatic changes, as believed by Mr. Orme. It is just the contrary with browns and whites, and intermarriage results in beautiful specimens of manhood and womanhood, as is proved throughout the wide world.

I am, therefore, of the strong belief that the original ancestors of the human race were either white or a light brown, and I will now explain how I arrived at such a conclusion.

Speaking from an Anthropological standpoint, there are only three great coloured divisions of the human race, viz., Brown, Black and white; and, they

coincide with the three racial branches of the descendants of Shem, Ham and Japhet, the three sons of Noah, as recorded in the Bible. All other coloured races are merely the off-shoots of these three great branches, and the changes in colour and features have been due to intermarriage, climatic changes, and physical surroundings.<sup>a</sup>

As already pointed out in my books and seven supplementary pamphlets (Messrs. Kelly and Walsh, Ltd.) all human migrations can be traced from the place of their common origin, the locality between the Tien Shan Mountains and the Kuen Lun Mountains (Chinese Turkestan) of the Central Asian Plateau, so frequently mentioned in the ancient history of China, Persia and India.

In studying the origin and migrations of the human race, care should be taken not to confuse the two migrations, viz., (a) *Ante-diluvial*, and (b) *Post-diluvial*.

The Ante-diluvial migration started from the Tarim River Basin of Chinese Turkestan, that historic locality between the Tien Shan and Kuen Lun mountains,— the land of “The River with four heads,” and the “Eden” of the Bible.

Before the great upheaval of Central Asia and the subsidence of a vast continent in the Pacific Ocean, which caused the sudden change in the North Polar Regions, which suddenly froze Northern Asia and Alaska and removed the cold from North East America and Northern Europe, and produced the great Tidal Wave which travelled round the World, and *suddenly* destroyed and  
5 wiped out all ancient prehistoric civilizations, thereby causing the puzzling and inexplicable “gap” in the histories of all modern nations, the four tributaries of the Tarim River of Chinese Turkestan were connected with the four great rivers Ganges, Indus, Oxus and Jaxartes. These great physical changes are verified by a careful study of the numerous ancient dried up water courses, and the

---

a. Although Ham might have had a darker skin than his two brothers Shem and Japhet, I do not mean to represent that one was Brown, one Black and the other white! The descendants of these three brothers must have gradually developed into the different Black, Brown, Reddish-Brown, and white races of the World. This proves the fallacy and absurdity of Darwin's Theory of “Evolution” and the “Descent of Man” (1871).

mountains, and the geological conditions of the Central Asian Plateau, which all show signs of terrific volcanic action and upheaval. To prove that all the ancient prehistorical civilizations were suddenly destroyed and wiped out of existence by the Tidal Wave of The Deluge, it will be sufficient to recall and remember the mysterious and hitherto inexplicable blank in the ancient history of China, Egypt, Greece, Chaldea, Mexico, New Mexico, Peru, Switzerland (Age of lake dwellings), Ancient Britain (Age of triliths of Stonehenge, and the grave mounds and "sentinel" stones of the Orkney Islands) and Polynesia.

No written records of the history of these prehistoric nations exist, and the present natives of the land are quite ignorant of the history and origin of these lost races. Another proof of the universal destruction of life by the Diluvial Tidal Wave is the existence of vast deposits of Diluvial Loess, salt lakes, salt deposits, and salt deserts in the different continents of the world. And I am positively certain that if further excavations are made amidst the sand which surrounds the Sphinx and Pyramids of Egypt, and the vast Loess areas of China and other parts of the world, the spades of archeologists and explorers will disclose Ante-diluvian relics, which will shed much light on the life and history of these prehistoric nations, which have been destroyed by the Deluge.<sup>a</sup>

The Post-diluvial migration started from the great *Loess* Plain of the Yellow River Valley District of China, where Noah and his descendants settled, after the Deluge. It is evident that Noah's Ark did not rest on the top of Mount Ararat of Armenia, since it would have been scarcely possible for Noah and his family to have descended from such a lofty precipitous crest in safety to the lower regions around them. "This great barren and solitary mountain, which rises from the plain of the Araxes to a sublime elevation of 17,260 feet above the sea-level, is

---

a. Further proof of the Diluvial origin of Loess is the Prehistoric Walled-city, which has been upheaved from the *Loess* plain of Kansu Province of China, by the terrific Earthquake, which destroyed over 300,000 of the inhabitants on 16th December, 1921. Report of the Civil Governor of Kansu and also Roy Chapman Andrew's article in the June 1922 Number of the American magazine "*Asia*," referring to this wonderful upheaved Prehistoric city, and dealing with the geological and paleontological (Tertiary) discoveries made in Mongolia by Dr. Granger, Dr. Morris and Professor Berkey, members of the Third Asiatic Expedition of the American Asiatic Society.

a volcanic giant covered with eternal snow! The place, where the Ark grounded, beyond all question, was a place from whence the act of leaving the Ark could be accomplished with ease and safety; and consequently, it was not upon the summit of Mount Ararat of Armenia. What is remarkable and interesting is the fact that belonging to the Tien Shan system of mountains is a range called the *Narat Mountains*. The Tidal Wave of the Deluge must have deposited Noah's Ark on the Narat Mountains (Mountains of Ararat of Genesis of the Bible), and ancient Chinese history mentions that Noah lived in the vicinity of Tien Shan after the Deluge, and that he drained the plateau of its flood waters. And what is most important to remember, the Central Asian Plateau is the original home of all our domestic animals, fowls and birds; and according to the American botanist and horticulturist, Frank N. Meyers of the Bureau of Plant Industry, Department of Agriculture, Washington, D.C., Kansu Province is the original home of all our Fruit trees.<sup>a</sup>

It must now be clear to all thinking men that it was from the Great Plain of the Yellow River Valley District of China that God scattered Noah's descendants abroad upon the face of the Earth to repopulate the whole World. Having descended into the lowlands from the highlands of the Central Asian Plateau, later generations of Shem, Ham and Japhet's descendents lost all trace of China (Shinar), the land of their origin. Their descendants never thought of returning to China (Shinar), the land of their origin, as they must have been over-awed by the vast and formidable mountain systems of India, Tibet, and Chinese Turkestan, which acted as an "exclusion wall" for nearly two thousand years, resulting in China being a *terra incognita* to the West, until B.C. 200, when the armies of the "Han" Emperors of China reached the confines of Persia.

Having lost all trace of China (Shinar), and being surrounded by vast oceans, Diluvian inland seas, the frozen wilds of Siberia, and formidable mountain chains, they mistook Mesopotamia and the surrounding country to be the whole World; and this is why the ancient historians of the West crowded all places, rivers, and

---

a. How thankful The Church and the Christian World would be, if the timbers of Noah's Ark could be found on the Narat Mountains of Tien Shan.



mountains mentioned in Chapters I to XI of Genesis into this corner of Western Asia. Could they have made a greater mistake? And, it is this mistake, which has confused and confounded The Church and the Thinking World for close on four thousand years. Having established the fact that Noah's descendants were scattered abroad upon the face of the Earth from the Yellow River Valley District of China, it is reasonable to suppose that the original colour of these people was white or a light brown, and not black, as supposed by Mr. Orme. And, it is note-worthy that in historical paintings and frescoes of the "Tang" dynasty, the Ancient Chinese are painted with white faces. Their features are noble and classical, and their long flowing robes are Grecian in style. It is, therefore, hard to believe that these ancient Chinese had black ancestors.

Hoping that Mr. Orme will be pleased to elucidate his theory in his coming lecture.

TSE TSAN TAI

謝 纘 泰

HONGKONG, 7th January, 1922

## Origin of the Mongolian Desert, and Its Prehistoric Fossils<sup>a</sup>

To the Editor, "*North China Star*."

Sir,—I have read with very great interest the report of individual speeches, and the reception of Messrs. Roy Chapman Andrews and Morris, Dr. Willis, Dr. Berkey and Dr. Granger, members of the Third Asiatic Expedition by the Chinese Geographical Society of Peking, appearing in your issue of the 2nd October, 1922.

Over thirty years research work in connection with the past exploits of geologists and explorers (deceased), has enabled me to make some interesting discoveries, and one of my findings is that the sand of the Mongolian Desert is not due to erosion, as believed by Dr. Berkey, who has expressed himself as follows:—

We have been under the impression that the country was of sand, and that there were few rocks. This did not prove to be the case and there were a lot of rocks. So we are no longer uncertain of the general structural geographical formation of Mongolia. This does not mean that we do not meet with difficulty. On the contrary "there are some very difficult complications and conglomerate stages. *The Gobi desert is a rock desert left by erosion.* (The italics are mine.)

It is the "Erosion" theory that has led geologists and scientists to make the great and misleading mistake of attributing millions of years to the age of fossils and the bones of extinct mammals, which they have dug up from the sands of the Altai region of these deserts of Mongolia.

- 2 It is not surprising to me that the beds of these deserts and sand-strewn expanses should have been found to be rocky, as, according to my humble finding, the surface of the vast Mongolian Desert was at one time (about 5,000 years ago), practically on the same level as the present land surface of Shantung, Chihli, and Manchuria.

---

a. Tsan Tai Tse, *No. 9.: Origin of the Mongolian Desert, and Its Prehistoric Fossils*, Pamphlet [printed by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong], 1923.

The accumulation of the sand of the vast Mongolian Desert has not been due to the erosion of rocks, *necessitating millions of years for its accomplishment*, but is the resultant action of the sun and wind on the vast deposits of mud or *Loess*, which were deposited there, and in other parts of the world, when the Diluvian Tidal Wave passed round the World and flooded the different Continents, destroying animal life, and wiping out all Prehistoric civilizations.

The mud or *Loess* having been dried by the sun, and the fine dust having been blown away by the wind, the long process of desiccation has resulted in the formation of the vast Mongolian Desert, which had previously been a great Diluvian Inland Sea.

The annual dust storms of North China are an example of how this process of desiccation has been working for the past 4,000 years.

This great Tidal Wave, just referred to, was caused by a terrific terrestrial convulsion, which upheaved Central Asia and submerged a vast Continent in the Pacific Ocean. And, it was this great subsidence and upheaval of Continental land, which removed the North Polar Regions (Ante-diluvian) from the Centre of Greenland (about Latitude 75°, Longitude 40°) to their present position, suddenly froze Northern Asia and Alaska, which were then semi-tropical, and caused the Arctic cold to withdraw from Northern Europe, and Scotland, and the Lake Region of North America.

The upheaval of Central Asia and the subsidence of the sea-board of Eastern Asia is proved by the existing geological conditions, and by a careful study of the different Island groups (mountain tops) and the rocks of the seashore, extending 3 from Shantung Province in the North to Tonkin (Indo China) in the South.

None of this land has emerged from the sea or shows any signs of having been at one time the bed of the sea. Although some scientists have attempted to prove that the existence of certain marine animals and crustaceans, which have been discovered in the lakes of Central China, are proof of the emergence of this land from the sea, they forget that all that stretch of land now comprising Hunan, Hupeh, and parts of Kiangsi, Anhui and Kiangsu, was once a great Inland Sea, created by the Diluvian Tidal Wave, which flooded the Asiatic Continent.

(See my Books and Ten Supplementary Pamphlets, published by M. Kelly & Walsh, Limited of Hongkong, Shanghai, Hankow, Yokohama and Singapore). In my humble opinion the recognition of these great physical changes will enable geologists and scientists to solve the great glacial “riddles,” and explode the theory of the “Four Great Ice Ages.”

Not only will it be possible to solve the great glacial “riddles,” but it will also be possible to lift the dark veil from other great geological and scientific conundrums, which are still perplexing and bewildering the World’s geologists, scientists, historians, and bibliologists.

Thanking you for trespassing on your valuable space.— Yours, etc.

TSE TSAN TAI

謝 纘 泰

HONGKONG, 26th October, 1922

## Extract

*From the “North China Star,” dated 8th October, 1922*

### Chinese Geographical Society Hears Expedition Men Lecture

DR. BERKEY TALKS

- 4 Dr. Berkey, said:— “Our chief purpose was purely scientific and we had no other motives, military, commercial or otherwise. We started from Peking, thence to Kalgan, Urga, and three hundred miles South to the Altai Mountains, and across them, and back to Kalgan, covering twenty-five hundred miles which were virtually unknown scientifically speaking. Mr. Morrison and I were together always, and took observations constantly. A continuous geographical cross section was made mile by mile. The nature of the result is that we are able to map out the topographic and physiographic history of Mongolia. The second result is that we are able to map out a cross section for a thousand miles. Thirdly we have been able to determine what some of the major problems are, and where the likeliest places to solve them are.

We got great and constant results.

We have been under the impression that the country was of sand and that there were few rocks. Now we are no longer uncertain of the general structural geographical formation of Mongolia. This does not mean that we do not meet with difficulty. On the contrary there are some very difficult complications and conglomerate stages. The Gobi is a rock desert left by erosion."

## “Correlativity” — New Theory of the Universe and Origin of Typhoons<sup>a</sup>

### Special Article

### “Correlativity.” New Theory of the Universe and Origin of Typhoons

*Reprinted from the “South China Morning Post,” Dated, 28th December, 1922*

Many attempts have been made in ancient and modern times to solve the riddle of the Universe, but without success.

Although the task is practically hopeless, still I might be excused for attempting to add a little knowledge to some of the questions connected with this entrancing and world-absorbing subject.

What wonders are produced by heat and cold!

We shall never understand how heat and cold, and matter, and life originated, and neither shall our puny intellects be able to fathom the depths of space or discover how this World and the Universe came into existence.

That is the secret of Almighty God, the Creator, and it shall always remain His secret. It is pure vanity for us mortals to attempt to solve this secret, and no mortal man shall ever succeed in doing so.

- 2 In my humble opinion the existence of this world of ours and the countless bodies of stellar space are due to *Heat* and *Cold*, but how they took form and how this heat and cold originated is a mystery, which I leave to our scientists to unravel.

In the beginning, these Cosmic bodies consisted of molten matter which gradually cooled, but how they got separated, and how they retain their allotted positions and spheres in space, is still a riddle. But, I venture to believe that they are kept in their relative positions and spheres by the heat of their bodies and

---

a. Tsan Tai Tse, *No. 10.: “Correlativity”: New Theory of the Universe and Origin of Typhoons*, Pamphlet [printed by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong], 1923.

the *frigid* cold of space. You may term this phenomena of heat and cold and its laws of attraction and repulsion *Gravitational Correlativity*; and by "gravitational correlativity," I do not mean Einstein's "Relativity," which is a theory that nobody appears to understand. According to Einstein the light rays of the sun should be curved, when observed from the surface of the rotating Earth, and this is why the great Astronomers of the world devoted so much attention to the recent eclipse of the sun.

Many photographs of this eclipse were taken in the attempt to prove or disprove the truth of Einstein's theory, and scientists are now anxiously awaiting the verdict.

The Earth in its relation to the Cosmic Universe may be compared to the *minutest* speck of dust floating and revolving in the electric light or in the sunlight. Therefore, when a body like the Earth is enveloped in light there is no question of rays in any "form" (lightbending) whatever. The Earth and its shadow (night) is always enveloped in solar light, and this "etherial liquid" lights up the whole space of the Solar system, and penetrates to the minutest hole conceivable. It is therefore difficult to recognise the truth of Einstein's theory in its application to light.

The Earth is revolving in *frigid* space, and the cold of space is as intense as the cold of the North and South Polar Regions. It may be compared to a speck of atomic dust floating and revolving in the icy-cold air of a refrigerator. If it were not for the molten heat in the bowels of the Earth, the world would be barren and waterless, and cold and dead as the moon. In time to come, after the heat of the Earth has become exhausted and the water of the oceans dried up, this world of ours will undergo a similar transformation, and the frigid cold which surrounds the Earth will eventually close in and envelope it in it's icy mantle of death. 3

Many scientists believe that the Earth is surrounded by a "Vacuum" or ether, but this cannot be true, as the heat of the sun would never be able to reach us, and the Earth would be dead and cold.

The air as we ascend gets rarefied, but there is no such thing as a "Vacuum"

in space.

It is the frigid cold of space that gives the sky its colour, and prevents the *Radium* rays of the sun from burning and scorching the Earth, and which causes the formation of vapour into clouds at certain fixed altitudes, resulting in rain, hail, and snow, and other natural phenomena.

This frigid cold of space also caused the freezing and glaciation of the summits of all the high mountains of the World, when the flood waters of the Diluvial Tidal Wave swept round the Earth and engulfed the mountains and valleys of the different Continents; and it explodes the erroneous theory of the “Ice Age” and the “Four Great Ice Ages,” which our leading scientists believe to have been a fact.

The climatic and geological features of Kilimanjaro Africa’s highest mountain, and the mountains of Australia and the Andes of South America are also proof of the fallacy of this theory.

The true cause of *Atmospheric Electricity* has not yet been discovered, and I now humbly venture to offer my solution of the mystery.

- 4 The Earth as it exists to-day is a *natural electric battery* enveloped in frigid cold, and galvanized into action by the generating heat-rays of the sun, and this is why the Earth revolves and why it is enveloped by electric waves, which enable wireless messages to be sent to all parts of the World.

The phenomena of the “*Aurora Borealis*” and “*Aurora Australis*” of the North and South Polar Regions is due to the release of streams of natural electricity, and their contact with the frigid cold of space.

This frigid cold accounts for the phenomena of attraction and repulsion, *i.e.* *Gravitational Correlativity*, which prevents objects from flying off the surface of the Earth into space.

And, this is also the reason why Newton’s apple fell to the ground.

But, the rotation of the Earth will gradually slow down and cease, when the oceans are dried up, and when the internal heat of the Earth becomes exhausted



by eruptions and earthquakes.<sup>a</sup>

All the atomic dust or nebulae, stars, planets and planetary systems of the Universe are so nicely correlated and bound together by the laws of *heat* and *cold*, that the least change in bodies or systems is instantaneously readjusted with the most mathematical precision, and thus the Universe with its "changes" and all that it contains and consists of, is eternal and everlasting.

Having roughly expounded my theory of the Universe, we now come to the origin of Typhoons.

## Origin of Typhoons

Quite recently there appeared in the *China Express and Telegraph* (London) 5 an article under the heading "Forewarnings of Typhoons" by a scientist named Clements.

In this article Mr. Clements expounds the theory that the moon and sun, especially the former, have great influence on earthquakes, eruptions and storms, and he attempts to prove by "degrees" and "angles" that the recent destructive Swatow typhoon and tidal wave were caused by the united pull of the sun and moon!

I find that his theory of "degrees" and "angles" is quite as confusing and bewildering as Einstein's theory of "Relativity."

If, as he says, typhoons are due to the pull of the sun and moon, why are these terrible storms reserved for the China Sea, and why don't they have them in Europe and Australia ?

Why do these storms originate in the Pacific Ocean, and why do they invariably travel towards the China Coast?

Why don't they travel south towards Australia and west towards the shores of America?

---

a. This very gradual slowing down of the Earth's motion has been verified by the Astronomer Royal, Sir Frank Dyson, in his lecture on eclipses at the City Y.M.C.A. in Aldersgate Street, London, but he believes in the theory that the slowing down process is due to *Tidal friction!* See "South China Morning Post" of 13th January, 1923.

Having suffered losses through typhoons in the past, the cause and place of origin of these peculiar storms has always kept me thinking.

It was during my research work, when investigating upheavals and subsidences and deep-sea soundings in connection with the Bible record of "The Deluge," that I discovered that a vast Continent lies under the waves of the Pacific Ocean. This vast continent extended from China to Easter Island, and its existence is proved by the Prehistoric monuments, — stone statues, and stone buildings, &c. — which exist on several widely separated island groups, the great fresh-water lagoons or atolls (craters of extinct volcanoes), and by 87,000,000 square miles of red volcanic mud at the bottom of the Ocean.

- 6 The existence of this submerged continent is also proved by the recent subsidence and disappearance of Easter Island together with its Prehistoric (Antediluvian) gigantic stone statues, buildings, and hieroglyphic carvings. (For full particulars, see my books and Ten supplementary pamphlets, published by Messrs. Kelly and Walsh, Ltd.). The subterranean and submarine heat is continually rising to the surface of the Ocean from this vast submerged volcanic area; and in Summer, when the two hot airs ("subterranean" and "solar") commingle and meet the cold currents of air which rush in from the frigid regions of space to fill the vacuum, a whirlwind is created, which begins to wove and gains in impetus as it travels in a north or north-westerly direction against the rotating Earth, and towards the coast of the Asiatic continent.

Such is the origin and cause of these dreaded storms of the China Sea, and as a remedy I suggest that meteorological and wireless stations be erected on all the important island groups of the Pacific Ocean, viz.: Ladrone Is., Pelew Is., Caroline Is., Marshall Is., Solomon Is., Gilbert Is., Fiji Is., Navigators Is., Low Archipelago, Marquesas Is., Sandwich Is., and also the Island of Santo Domingo de Basco and Pratas Island, as recommended by Father Algue, the famous meteorologist of Manila, and that these stations be placed in wireless communication with the Observatories at Manila, Siccawei, and Hongkong.

Warnings could then be collected and despatched to Manila, Hongkong, Singapore, Saigon, Sbanghai and Japan, whereby timely warning could be given

to the shipping in these ports and on the high seas, meaning the saving of thousands of precious lives, and property and valuable cargoes worth millions.

This theory of the origin of typhoons has already been mentioned in the Chinese translation of my book "The Creation, *etc.*," published in the year 1917.

## Solution of Easter Island Mystery<sup>a</sup>

### Solution of Easter Island Mystery

*To the Editor "South China Morning Post"*

Sir,— I have just read a very interesting article in the *Canton Times* of the 16th January last, under the heading "Professor Brown tells of his visit to Easter Island."

Professor J. Macmillan Brown of Christchurch, New Zealand, who has just returned from a visit to Easter Island, in writing about its monuments says:

These monuments are standing to-day just as they stood hundreds of years ago, huge images fashioned rudely in human form standing on great stone platforms. There are about 100 images, and between 400 and 500 platforms which circle the island. Some of the statues are of immense size, fully 70 feet in height, and they stand there, sphinx-like, mysterious, looking out to sea just as they looked in those days when for some mysterious reason the men who fashioned them, who in some marvelous manner drew them over miles of rough and hilly country, abandoned their work and never returned to it.

The article proceeds:

These workers must have left their work suddenly. On all sides is evidence of this. But why?

Professor Brown's theory is that the tens of thousands of workers who made and erected the monuments were people of some bygone Empire of the Pacific that has disappeared. Easter Island, barren and small, could never have supported so many people. They were fed by people in neighbouring islands, and these islands disappeared in some vast submergence, and with the sudden cutting off of their

---

a. Tsan Tai Tse, *No. 11.: Solution of Easter Island Mystery*, Pamphlet [printed by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong], 1923.

supplies, the workmen left their work and became cannibals. He puts the stoppage of work at so recent a date as 200 years ago. He thinks the present inhabitants are descendants of a slave race.

I am glad that this learned professor supports my 1914 finding that a vast continent lies submerged beneath the waves of the Pacific Ocean, but I do not agree with his statement that these gigantic stone figures are 200 years old. 2

My finding is that these huge monuments, fashioned rudely in human form, are Prehistoric (Antediluvian), and that they are about 5,000 years old. They were made by a race of idolatrous men, who worshipped the Sun, and who were versed in Astronomy and wrote and carved their speech in hieroglyphics like the Prehistoric Chinese, Egyptians, and Americans. This race inhabited a vast continent extending from China in the West to Easter Island in the East. They were expert stone-masons and builders, and erected massive stone structures and buildings resembling in many respects the Prehistoric (Antediluvian) stone structures of the "Egyptians" of the I to IV Dynasties of Egypt, the Mayas of Central America, and other contemporary nations, who peopled the Earth, before the "Flood."

Remnants of these massive stone structures may be seen to-day on several widely separated Island groups of the Pacific Ocean, viz., Marianne Islands, Caroline Islands, Marshall Islands, Marguesas Islands, Tonga Islands, Pitcairn Island, Easter Island, &c.

This vast continent became suddenly submerged by a terrific terrestrial convulsion, which also upheaved Central Asia, and created a great Tidal Wave, which swept round the World, engulfing the different continents in rapid succession and suddenly destroying all Prehistoric Civilizations.

And this was the Tidal Wave of the "Flood" of Genesis of the Bible (Genesis VII—II "In the six hundredth year of Noah's life, in the second month, the seventeenth day of the month, the same day were all the fountains of the great deep broken up and the windows of Heaven were opened.")

These Antediluvian workmen of Easter Island were suddenly drowned by the devastating waters of the Tidal Wave, and this accounts for their mysterious

disappearance, and the sudden stoppage of work. They did not become cannibals and eat each other, as believed by Professor Brown!

- 3 Further proof of this submerged continent is the sudden subsidence and disappearance of Easter Island beneath the waves of the Pacific, during the recent Chilean earthquake.

The present natives of Easter Island have no connection whatever with this extinct Antediluvian race of men, but are the descendants of a Post-Diluvian race of men, whose Ancestors migrated from the Central Asian Plateau of Chinese Turkestan, after the "Flood."

Hoping I have succeeded in unravelling the mystery, which has enshrouded Easter Island ever since the day of its discovery by Roggeveen on Easter Day in 1722, and thanking you for the insertion of this letter in your valuable paper. —Yours, etc.

TSE TSAN TAI

謝 纘 泰

HONGKONG, 1st February, 1923

### **Extract**

*From "Canton Times," 16th January, 1923*

## **Professor Brown Tells of His Visit to Easter Island**

### **Great Stone Monuments Stand There Today as They Did Hundreds of Years Ago**

Auckland, New Zealand, November 10th, 1922

- 4 The latest investigator of the mystery of Easter Island — that lonely island with its stone images that lies far out in the Pacific West of Chili — is Professor J. Macmillan Brown of Christchurch, New Zealand, who has just returned from a visit to the spot. For many years this isolated and inaccessible island, repository of a page of history that is very difficult, indeed impossible, to read, has interested natural scientists.

Prof. Macmillan Brown is well qualified to explore its mysteries, for he has devoted himself for some years past to the study of ethnological problems in the Pacific. Few men have travelled so widely and penetrated into so many out-of-the-way places as he has. His travels have embraced Japan, Micronesia, Melanesia, Polynesia and South America, and he has written much about the migrations, the ancient empires, and the innumerable problems of origin and change that the Pacific presents.

Professor Brown says Easter Island is not only the most difficult place in the world to reach, but the hardest to get away from. He reached the island on Christmas Day, 1921, in a Chilian warship, and left there in May of this year in a Chilian schooner, which makes a yearly visit to the island. Easter Island belongs to Chili and is used as a sheep and cattle ranch by a firm in Valparaiso. It is 30,000 acres in extent, and the land is barren and porous, with no forest and no streams. 5

It supports 300 natives and two white men. In some far-off time an unknown race of men raised the great stone figures that have puzzled so many natural scientists.

These monuments," says the professor "are standing to-day just as they stood hundreds of years ago, huge images fashioned rudely in human form standing on great stone platforms. There are about 100 images, and between 400 and 500 platforms which circle the island.

Some of the statues are of immense size, fully 70 feet in height, and they stand there, sphinx-like, mysterious, looking out to sea just as they looked in those days when for some mysterious reason the men who fashioned them, who in some marvellous manner drew them over miles of rough and hilly country abandoned their work and never returned to it.

These workers must have left their work suddenly. On all sides is evidence of this. But why?

Professor Brown's theory is that the tens of thousands of workmen who

made and erected the monuments were people of some bygone empire of the Pacific that has disappeared.

Easter Island, barren and small, could never have supported so many people. They were fed by people in neighbouring islands, and these islands disappeared in some vast submergence, and with the sudden cutting off of their supplies, the workmen left their work and became cannibals.

He puts the stoppage of work at so recent a date as 200 years ago.

He thinks the present inhabitants are descendants of a slave race.—C.S.M.

### **Further Proof of Upheaval and Subsidence of Land**

#### **Volcanic Eruption**

#### **A Smoke Geyser at Sea**

#### **Experience of the Wakasa Maru**

*Reprinted from "South China Morning Post," Dated 14th March, 1923*

6 A subterranean volcanic eruption is reported to have occurred at a distance of about 350 miles from Singapore. The first news' received of the occurrence was a wireless message sent by the N.Y.K. steamer Wakasa Maru, on her way down to Singapore from Hongkong.

When the Wakasa Maru, arrived in Singapore a report of the eruption was made by Capt. K. Horikawa, in command of the vessel. The Captain's statements are backed by some remarkable photographs which he took, showing a dark cloud of smoke rising perpendicularly from the surface of a sea as calm as a mill pond, with a dense volume of steam floating away at a lower height.

The Captain's version of the eruption, is as follows: Just before half past three on Friday afternoon last, he was informed by the chief officer who was on duty on the bridge, that a dense column of smoke had been sighted on the port bow. The Captain went on the bridge and at once altered the course of the vessel to a point which would bring them closer to the smoke. He thought that the smoke was possibly the result of-a ship on fire, most probably an oil tanker in distress. He steered to within a few miles, about three, of the smoke,



and discovered that it was coming direct from the sea. It was about 4.45 when the steamer neared the spot. The smoke was being emitted with a series of explosions, and the height varied according to the force of the explosion. He obtained his second photograph during one of the biggest explosions witnessed by him. The column of smoke, mingled with ashes and steam, on this occasion, reached a height which he thought to be well over a thousand feet above the level of the sea. The column at its lowest was not under 300 feet. The passengers were in a state of great excitement and as many of them who had cameras attempted to obtain photographs of the remarkable sight. As the ship proceeded on its way, and the scene of the eruption was left behind, a distinct rumbling sound was heard, even when the vessel was some miles from the spot.

The eruption is stated to have taken place in the vicinity of Round Island and the La Paix rock, about 20 miles south of Pulo Cecire de Mer.

The Wakasa Maru is a ship of 3,787 tons nett, and her present line is from Japan to Bombay. She leaves for Penang to-day. The alteration in her course did not take her very far out of her way.

A test was made of the temperature of the sea when the vessel was close to the eruption, and the water was found to be quite warm. The sea was also very calm at the time, and the sky overhead quite clear.

## **New Island Off Annam**

### **Result of Volcanic Eruption**

Our Own Correspondent

Singapore, 13th March, 1923.

Following the volcanic eruption at sea recently witnessed by the Captain of the Wakasa Maru the cruiser Carlisle forwards a wireless message picked up by the s.s. Morea, whose Captain reports that a new island, half a mile long and fifty feet high, has appeared at Latitude 10.10 North and Longitude 109.20 East — half an hour's steam from the island of Cecire de Mer (off the coast of Annam).

INSERT—PAMPHLET, NO. 11

*Reprinted from the "South China Morning Post," Dated, 16th March, 1928*

## Correspondence

### The New Island

*To the Editor, S.C.M. Post*

Sir,— I was greatly pleased to read in your issue of the 14th inst. a telegram from your Singapore correspondent announcing the upheaval by volcanic action of a new island half a mile long and 50 feet high in latitude 10.10 North and longitude 109.20 East off the coast of Annam, as it confirms my previous finding (1914) of the upheaval and subsidence of the land surface of the Earth.

The recent subsidence of Easter Island in the Pacific and the upheaval of this new island is a remarkable coincidence, and will provide valuable material for our geologists and scientists, as very often such "changes" are unfortunately submarine, and therefore, hidden from scientific observation.

Owing to the gradual exhaustion of the heat in the bowels of the Earth, we shall never witness another gigantic upheaval of land such as the one that upheaved Central Asia and submerged the "Pacific" continent, resulting in the creation of a great tidal wave, which travelled round the world and destroyed all prehistoric civilizations (B.C. 2348).

But, we shall experience minor subsidences and upheavals, and we are most likely to witness future upheavals of land in the Pacific Ocean, which may reveal to us the cities, architecture, and history of the missing Antediluvian race of men that once peopled this vast submerged continent.

I believe that the continents most likely to be affected by earthquakes and volcanic action in the future will be South America, Australia and South Africa.—  
Yours etc.

TSE TSAN TAI

謝 纘 泰

HONGKONG, 15th March, 1923

## Ancient History — Mysterious Blank in Egypt — The Age of the Siberian Mammoth<sup>a</sup>

### Special Article

*Reprinted from the "South China Morning Post. Dated, 28th Feb., 1923."*

The sensational and marvellous find of Egyptian jewels and wonderful historical treasures made by Lord Carnarvon and Mr. Howard Carter in the rock-hewn tomb of King Tutankhamen of the Eighteenth Dynasty in the "Valley of Kings" of Upper Egypt, is of world-wide interest, and Egyptologists and archaeologists will now make another strenuous attempt to reconstruct and solve the hitherto mysterious and inexplicable blank in Ancient Egyptian History.

Leading Egyptologists, archaeologists and scientists do not believe in the story of the "Flood" of Genesis of the Bible, and my 1914 finding that all Pre-historic civilisations of the World were suddenly destroyed and wiped out of existence by a great Tidal Wave, which swept round the World and flooded the different continents in succession.

It is also my finding, and a remarkable fact, that the Human Race originated in Chinese Turkestan in the locality between the Tien Shan and Kuen Lun mountains, and was "reborn" in the person of Noah and his descendants in practically the same locality, after the Great Upheaval of Central Asia and the destruction of the World by the Tidal Wave of the "Flood" of Genesis.

### The Tidal Wave.

The truth of this Tidal Wave has already been proved in my previous published pamphlets (Eleven).

This great World catastrophe accounts for the hitherto mysterious and inexplicable blank in the Ancient History of Egypt (Period between the Fourth and Eleventh dynasties), China, Chaldea, Greece, Assyria, Arabia, Persia, India, South 2

---

a. Tsan Tai Tse, *No. 12.: Ancient History — Mysterious Blank in Egypt — The Age of the Siberian Mammoth*, Pamphlet [printed by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong], 1923.

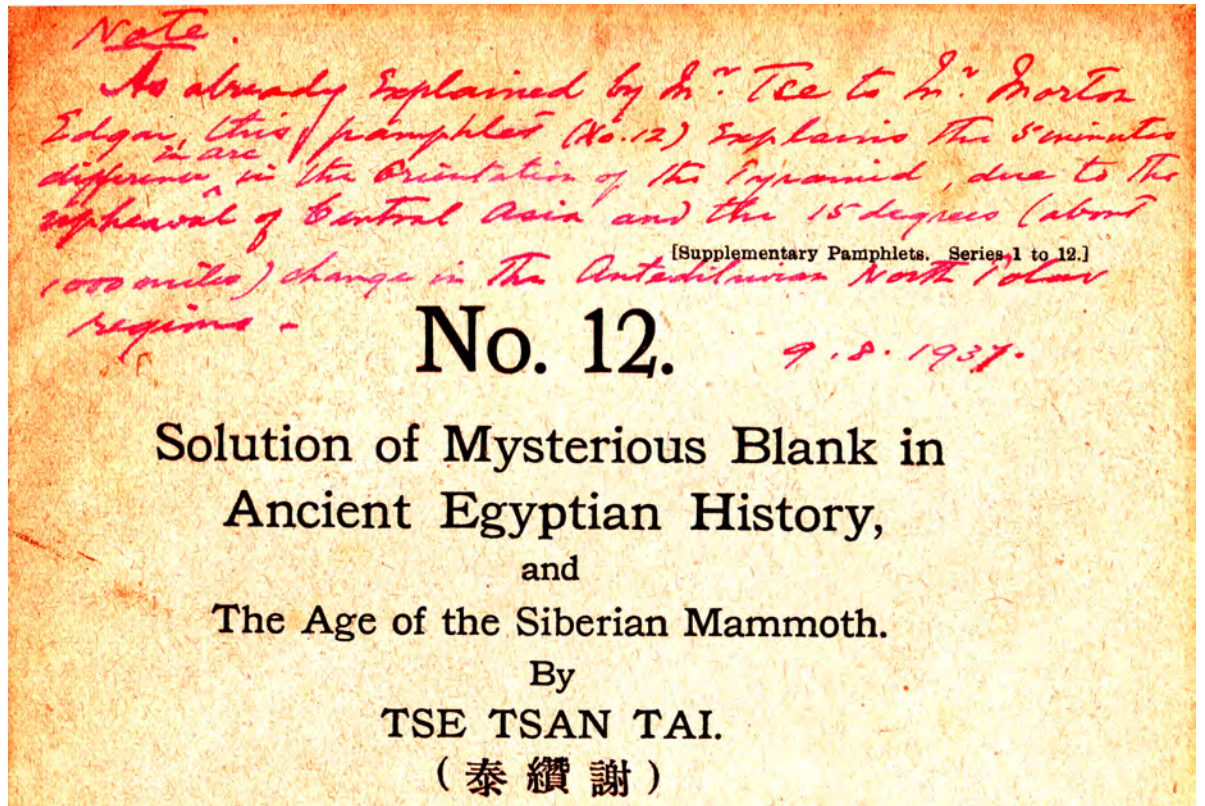


Figure 2.2: Frontpage, Pamphlet 12

Africa, North America, Central America, Columbia, Peru, Europe, Australia, and Polynesia (Sunken "Pacific Continent").

My finding is that Egyptian history consists of two periods — (1) Antediluvian, (2) Post-diluvian.

The Ante-diluvian period ends with the Fourth Dynasty and its contemporary dynasties, and the Post-diluvian period commences with the advent of the Hamitic races and the conquering Hyksos or Shepherd Kings (Shemites).

a. In Tse's handwriting: "Note: As already explained by Mr. Tse to Mr. Morton Elgar, this pamphlet (No. 12) explains the 5 minutes difference in arc in the orientation of the Pyramid, due to the upheaval of Central Asia and the 15 degrees (about 1,000 miles) change in the Antediluvian North Polar regions. 9. 8. 1937."

The truth of this Tidal Wave has already been proved in my previous published pamphlets (Eleven).

This great World catastrophe accounts for the hitherto mysterious and inexplicable blank in the Ancient History of Egypt (Period between the Fourth and Eleventh dynasties), China, Chaldea, Greece, Assyria, Arabia, Persia, India, South Africa, North America, Central America, Columbia, Peru, Europe, Australia, and Polynesia (Sunken "Pacific Continent").

My finding is that Egyptian history consists of two periods — (1) Antediluvian, (2) Post-diluvian.

The Ante-diluvian period ends with the Fourth Dynasty and its contemporary dynasties, and the Post-diluvian period commences with the advent of the Hamitic races and the conquering Hyksos or Shepherd Kings (Shemites).

In Egypt dynasties Four, and Five and Six (contemporary) were productive of an abundance of monuments. The Sphinx and the three great pyramids of Khufu (Great), Khafra (Second), and Menkaura (Third) belong to this period.

It was at the close of the Third Dynasty that buildings with hewn stones began to appear, and it was also noted for its cultivation of letters. Dynasties Four, Five and Six was the Pyramid Age, and at this time there was great material prosperity, and Arts were in a condition of excellence, as proved by the monuments and sculptures of this period.

The "magnificent" civilisation of this idolatrous race of Sun and Idol worshippers was suddenly destroyed and wiped out of existence by the Tidal Wave of the "Flood" of Genesis (B.C. 2348).

### **Vast Cities Engulfed**

Their vast cities and magnificent monuments were engulfed and swamped by the devastating waters of this tidal wave, and buried in the mud (Loess), which was swept down from the plateaus and valleys of the upper reaches of the river Nile. And these cities and monuments of this wonderful Antediluvian race of men remained hidden and forgotten for about 200 years (Period of "blank" in Ancient Egyptian History), until the appearance of the Post-diluvian Hamitic,

and later Shemitic races, whose ancestors migrated into Asia Minor from the Central Asian Plateau of Chinese Turkestan, after the "Flood."

- 3 These Hamitic and Shemitic races established themselves in the land of this extinct Anie-diluvian race of "Egyptians," and copied their architecture and monuments, but their Art was much inferior and almost primitive in comparison. It was not until the Twelfth Dynasty that their art and letters began to show any marked improvement, and then they were merely copyists!

The interval between the Fourth and Eleventh dynasties is notable for its complete cessation of monuments. The numerous names of unknown kings, mentioned by Egyptian historian Manetho, must have been Hamitic or Shemitic chiefs, who took possession of this ancient land, after the "Flood."

The duration of this mysterious "blank" period must have been very long, for the eclipse was very complete.

Mariette says: "When Egypt, with the Eleventh Dynasty, awoke from its long sleep, the ancient traditions were forgotten. The proper names of the kings and ancient nobility, the titles of the high functionaries, the style of the hieroglyphic writing, and even the religion, all seemed new. The monuments are rude, primitive, and sometimes even barbarous, and to see them one would be inclined to think that Egypt under the Eleventh Dynasty was beginning again the period of infancy which it had already passed through 1,500 years earlier under the Third."

The Ancient contemporary pre-historic civilisations of China, Chaldea, Greece, Assyria, Arabia, Persia, India, South Africa, North America, Central America, Columbia, Peru, Europe, Australia, and Polynesia, were similarly destroyed and wiped out of existence by this Tidal Wave.

And, this Tidal Waves also accounts for the sudden destruction and mysterious disappearance of the "magnificent" Maya civilisation (Sun and Idol worshippers) of Central America, and the sudden and mysterious stoppage of work on the monuments of Easter Island, and on the great stone obelisk, recently discovered unfinished in its quarry bed at Assouan. And indeed, it accounts for similar happenings in other parts of the World, where Pre-historic relics have

been found.

The *Loess* which covers and surrounds these Ante-diluvian monuments of Egypt was carried down to the Lower levels of the Nile from the plateaus and valleys of Nubia, and its upper reaches. It has been scorched and dried by the tropical sun, and the fine dust blown away by the wind, and 5,000 years of this process of desiccation has resulted in the formation of the extensive salt marshes and sandy deserts on the left and right banks of the river. And the Great Sahara Desert and other deserts of Asia, Africa, America and Australia have been formed in a similar manner. 4

But, these "things" shall always remain mysterious and inexplicable to Egyptologists, archaeologists and scientists, so long as they persist in adhering to their disbelief in the world-devastating Tide Wave of the "Flood" of *Genesis*.

### Preserved Mammoth

Another mysterious and inexplicable riddle, which has baffled our scientists is the wonderful preservation of the bodies of mammoths in the ice of Siberia.

My finding is that the wonderful preservation of the bodies of these extinct animals has been due to the sudden freezing of Northern Asia and Siberia (before the "Flood," Northern Asia, Siberia and Alaska were Semi-tropical), caused by the upheaval of Central Asia and the subsidence of a vast continent in the Pacific Ocean, which caused the Earth to plunge and make a list of about 15 degrees,<sup>a</sup> and removed the Ante-diluvian North Polar regions from Central Greenland to their present position. The Arctic cold suddenly withdrew from the North-East portions of North America (Labrador, Lake Region and Hudson Bay Littoral) and portions of Northern Europe, and suddenly advanced towards the Asiatic Continent, freezing Northern Asia (Siberia) and Alaska, which were then enjoying a Semi-Tropical climate, as proved by the rich alluvial soil, forest trees, and Alpine vegetation. The flood-waters of the thawing glaciers and massive ice-fields accounts for the enormous masses of Glacial debris, which cover 1,606,000 5

---

a. This can be verified by a careful study of the geological and glacial conditions of North East America (Glacial), Northern Asia (non-Glacial) and Northern Europe (Glacial)

square miles of territory in North America, and about the same area in Europe; and it is an important and noteworthy fact, that none of this Glacial debris is found in Northern Asia, Africa, South America and Australia. The mammoths, which were then browsing and roaming the vast plains and forests of Siberia, were suddenly caught and drowned by the floodwaters of this tidal wave, and then frozen hard by the Arctic cold, which suddenly overwhelmed them. And they have remained frozen hard and preserved in the ice for at least 5,000 years, which accounts for these Ante-diluvian creatures looking as perfect as if they had died yesterday instead of thousands of years ago. Sometimes these mammoths are dug out of the ice so wonderfully preserved that the flesh is still on the bones as well as the long brown hair that covered their bodies. In one specimen that was brought to light, the internal organs were fairly complete, and grass was found between its teeth!

These extinct mammoths are not Arctic animals, and neither are they tens of thousands or perhaps millions of years old, as believed by many of our leading scientists. If they had died a natural death, or had suddenly fallen dead whilst browsing, as believed by many scientists, the flesh of their bodies would have begun to decompose a few days after death, and the flesh and internal organs could never have been kept in such a perfect state of preservation for so many thousands of years.

This wonderful state of preservation is proof positive and absolute that these great Ante-diluvian beasts are not Arctic animals and that they were suddenly drowned, frozen, and preserved in the ice of Siberia, and did not die a natural death, as generally supposed.

I hope the mysterious and inexplicable blank in the Ancient History of Egypt and all other Pre-historic (Ante-diluvian) nations, and the mystery connected with the mammoths of Siberia, have been satisfactorily unravelled and explained, and humbly submit my discoveries and findings for the kind consideration and judgment of the Scientific World.



## Notes

1. On the unpaginated page facing vii, the author has written in red ink: "For further proofs — See supplementary pamphlets No. 1 to No. 49. See author's map of Asia before the great upheaval."

2. The author has underlined the word "translation."

3. The author has erased the word "Eastern" and substituted it with "Central."

4. The author has corrected "in the Bible" to "in God and the Bible."

5. 聖安 Sheng'an was Tse Tsan Tai's 字 zi courtesy name.

6. The author underlined the word "translation."

7. The author has erased the word "Eastern" and substituted "Central."

8. The author has erased the word "Eastern" and substituted "Central."

9. The author has placed the word "ceremonies" in inverted commas.

10. Footnote added by author.

11. The author has erased the word "Eastern" and substituted "Central."

12. The author has added: "and not in Asia Minor."

13. The footnote was added by the author.

14. The author has added: "(China)."

15. Footnote added by author.

16. The author has added "along the shores of the upheaved inland sea"; "Great Khingan Mountains of the"; "'journeying from the East"'; and has underlined the words "plain of Shinar."

17. The author has corrected "Ham" to become "Shem".

18. The author underlined "translation."
19. Author enclosed "Eden" in quotation marks.
20. Orig.: 張開初地天
21. Orig.: 陽陰辨古盤
22. Orig.: 白卵如形天
23. Orig.: 黃卵如形天
24. Orig.: 物萬生行五
25. The author substituted "sixth" for "seventh"
26. Orig.: 光三運合六
27. Orig.: 紀皇三
28. Orig.: 子二十皇天
29. Orig.: 綱提攝起歲化自而為無郎一十皇地
30. The author added "Including himself" at the beginning of the sentence and substituted "'brethren'" for "successors."
31. Orig.: 弟兄九皇人
32. The author enclosed "successors" in quotation marks.
33. Orig.: 長延最命受
34. Orig.: 歲千八萬各
35. The author added "'full' moons, *i.e.* months."
36. Orig.: 邦一興人一
37. Orig.: 疆邊無育發地州九掌分

38. Author added ("Pacific").

39. Author substituted "(Cretan Archipelago)" for "'Atlantis' (?) — Inhabited by primitive man before the Deluge."

40. Footnote added by author.

41. The word "(loess)" was added by author.

42. Orig.: 出以氏巢有

43. Orig.: 糧為始木食

44. Orig.: 室巢為木構

45. Orig.: 襲葉為衣裳

46. Orig.: 方其得飪烹出一氏人燧

47. Orig.: 火改取木纘

48. Orig.: 妨所無食飲

49. Orig.: 事其記繩結

50. Orig.: 詳考難代年

51. Orig.: 揚宣播德聖立昊太羲伏

52. Orig.: 首牛如身蛇

53. Orig.: 章異子容形

54. Orig.: 章成習代後命字制頡倉命

55. Orig.: 獻馬龍圖河

56. Orig.: 陽陰明卦畫

57. Orig.: 將禮為皮儷娶嫁教女男

58. Orig.: 羊豬牛馬畜食庖供牲養
59. Orig.: 爭戰相兵交氏工共融祝
60. Orig.: 崩山周觸頭怒勝不工共
61. Orig.: 驚 (帝) 上
62. Orig.: 穿維地震下折柱 (山) 天
63. Orig.: (山) 天補以石鏈立以氏媧女
64. Orig.: 堅其得勢地極立足鼈斷
65. Orig.: 然依地得 (山) 天水淹灰止聚
66. Orig.: 源根考可不氏五十位傳
67. The author added an opening square bracket by hand.
68. The author added a closing square bracket by hand.
69. The author substituted “Asian (Continental) plateau” for “East Asian plateau.”
70. The author substituted “cataclysmic upheaval must” for “upheaval may.”
71. The author substituted “leading” for “and.”
72. Footnote added by author.
73. The author removed “perhaps” before “due.”
74. The author removed “or to changes in the Sun, — the living and life-giving ball of Radium, — .”
75. The author capitalized “Tidal Wave.”
76. Author added footnote.
77. The author substituted “North Central Greenland” for “Baffin Bay and North Greenland.” The author added “Central.”

78. The author added "or the submerged Continent of Polynesia."
79. The author substituted "Indian races" for "Indians."
80. The author added "Dravidian."
81. Footnote added by author
82. Orig.: 立帝炎農神
83. Orig.: 耕民教始其
84. Orig.: 耜耒爲木斲
85. Orig.: 田桑在食衣
86. Orig.: 傳相得藥醫木草嘗口親
87. Orig.: 權橫並物貨易貿爲人教
88. Orig.: 年五廿百五世八凡代傳
89. Orig.: 備完漸事人氏轅軒帝皇
90. Orig.: 起戈乾習適雄爭始侯諸
91. Orig.: 旅軍迷霧作亂作嘗尤蚩
92. Orig.: 敵戰相兵起車南指造帝
93. Orig.: 裹鹿涿與殺擒帝被尤蚩
94. Orig.: 起屮沉病疾傳得始人後理道醫明發微精徹伯岐酌樞靈問素經內作轅軒
95. Orig.: 濟通皆陸水車船作木伐
96. Orig.: 起法算章九數算作首隸
97. Orig.: 誌文天負魚間洛河遊帝
98. Orig.: 子甲花成造撓大師命即

99. Orig.: 始此從樂音聲弦管有遂呂律調陽陰筒竹製倫伶
100. Orig.: 成鼎鑄銅采
101. Orig.: 一十百元壽年百一位在帝天朝龍騎
102. Orig.: 級三爲階土伐剪不茨茅地天宏德仁氏唐陶堯帝
103. Orig.: 日朔旬驗觀庭於生莢莫
104. The author added "(i.e. the Four Seasons)."
105. Orig.: 治疏而禹使年九泛水洪
106. Orig.: 視門家入未春三十外居
107. Orig.: 逝東從水引河九疏澤通
108. Orig.: 避逃皆獸猛澤山治益舉
109. Orig.: 戲歌而壤擊熙雍樂姓百
110. Orig.: 妻爲嫁女二敏聰知聞堯山歷耕舜大
111. Orig.: 中畝畝舜事備廩倉羊牛官百並械器侍奉遣男九
112. Orig.: 裏帝歸舜取
113. Orig.: 歲七十百一年二百立堯理舜舉嶽四盡於倦老堯
114. Orig.: 地河南位避遐升堯見舜
115. Orig.: 位帝節宮回之歸人與天市歸入者從恩舜感姓百
116. Author added "(i.e. Reu)."
117. Author added "2205" before the question mark.
118. Author added footnote.
119. The author added "(ancient)."

120. The Author added "God and."

121. The author added "(in China)."





## **Chapter 3**

**The Chinese Republic. A Short  
History of the Revolution. Also  
the Secret History of the  
Revolution**

中華民國革命秘史

**By TSE TSAN TAI**

開平纘泰謝聖安著

## Preface

Bagan Jermal,  
 (On the seaside)  
 Penang,  
 14th December, 1924.

My dear friend,

When I returned here a day or two ago from a visit to friends in the country I received the greatest and most pleasant surprise of my life, for then my wife handed to me the registered parcel you so very kindly sent me containing your extremely interesting and illuminating Secret History of the Great Revolution in serial form, as published in the "South China Morning Post."

It does you more than credit; it marks you as the Liberator of your countrymen, for not only did you carry through the "spade work" that made intimate success possible, at the risk of your life and of all near and dear to you, but you unostentatiously persevered in the great and good work until your efforts were crowned with success. You were content to allow others to take credit that, obviously, was due to your patient perseverance in well-doing, never doing aught that might kindle party strife or fan the flames of envy, hatred and malice which have had such a deleterious effect on the grand work of Reform.

And even now, it is clear, when the time has arrived that renders it essential to place the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth before the World, your action is due, not to any desire to belittle anyone, but the wholly patriotic incentive to efface from China's escutcheon blots which otherwise would, in all probability, have proved before long, exceedingly detrimental to the welfare of the nation as a whole.

You have done well, my dear friend, to now come out in the lime-light, and have thereby placed all lovers of truth and all who have the slightest regard for historical facts, and may be desirous to do justice to the Chinese, under a deep debt of gratitude to you. Heartiest congratulations!

*"Magna est veritas et prevalebit,"* and that at last the truth about the

---

a. Published as: Tsan Tai Tse, *The Chinese Republic. Secret History of the Revolution*, First edition (Hongkong: South China Morning Post, Ltd., 1924).<sup>1</sup>

Great Revolution is now available to all concerned in the welfare of your nation will assuredly redound to your credit for all time.

Truth, crushed to earth, will rise again  
For th' eternal years of God are hers  
But Error, wounded, writhes with pain  
And dies among her worshippers.

Assuming this will reach you in the festive season I avail myself of the opportunity to wish you many happy returns of the great day and a successful and prosperous New Year.

Fear not, good friend, if God be with you who shall prevail, against you!

Yours cordially and gratefully,

CHESNEY DUNCAN.

3

## Foreword

### The Last of The Mings

The last purely Chinese dynasty to rule China was the Ming, whose founder was a monk named Chu Yuan-chang (*Hung Wu*). Through weakness, decay and misrule the dynasty hastened to its end, and the disaffected throughout the Empire seized opportunities to rebel. The rebel leader who finally succeeded in raising a following strong enough to threaten Peking was Li Tzu-cheng.

The army protecting Peking against the advancing rebel hordes of Li Tzu-cheng was commanded by General Wu San-kwei, who, fearing defeat and the loss of the Capital, opened negotiations, for the armed assistance and support of the Manchu Tartars beyond the Great Wall, where their Chief Nurhachu (天命) had been patiently organizing his armies and waiting for the opportunity to grasp the throne of China from the Mings.

The Manchu Tartar Chief Tsung Teh gladly accepted General Wu San-kwei's invitation, and rapidly advanced with his army into the plains of Chihli; but before he could reach Peking the rebels under Li Tzu-cheng had already seized and sacked the Capital, and the weakling Emperor Tsung Ching, the last of the Mings, had strangled himself on the top of the Coal Hill, behind the Palace.

### The Advent of the Manchus

When General Wu San-kwei arrived at the Capital with the Manchu Tartar Chief and his army and drove out the rebels, the treacherous Tartar Chief refused to retire as previously agreed, and forcibly occupied the Palace of the Mings. His death happening shortly afterwards, his son Shun Chih mounted the Dragon Throne, and was proclaimed the first Manchu Emperor of the Tai Ching (Ta Tsing) Dynasty of China.

Thus ended the Ming Dynasty, followed by the advent of the usurping Manchu Tartars in China.

How the ferocious and barbarous Manchu Tartars completed the conquest of the Chinese Empire, after cruelly slaughtering millions of the inhabitants, and how they governed the country, since the day they usurped the Throne of the Ming, has already been recorded, and is now history. But, the following from the pen of my old friend and colleague Chesney Duncan is interesting: 4

As regards the part I played in the almost bloodless annihilation of one of the most degraded and monstrous despotisms that ever disfigured the annals of history, I counted it an honour to be able to assist, however feebly, in the triumph of civilization over barbarism of a particularly pernicious description. The Manchu usurpers were hampering the progress of the world and imperilling the political and commercial interests, of all really progressive states.

## **Movements for Independence**

Risings against Manchu misrule have been many and frequent, the most formidable being that of the "Taipings" under the leadership of Hung Hsiu-chuan, but all were ruthlessly suppressed.

The next great movement for the ousting of the usurping Manchus was the Great Revolution, culminating in the establishment of the Republic of China, the secret history of which I am now publishing to the world.

Since the failure of our first attempt to capture Canton on the 26th October 1895, the assassination of my "brother" and colleague Yeung Ku-wan, first President of the Hing Chung Whui Revolutionary Party in Hongkong, on the 10th January 1901, and the failure of my second attempt to capture Canton with a force under the command of Hung Chuen-Fook on the night of 28th January 1903, and establish a Commonwealth Government under a "Protector," I decided not to engender party strife by actively opposing Dr. Sun Yat Sen, but allowed him and his followers a free hand.

At my first meeting with Dr. Sun Yat Sen and others on the 13th of March 1895, after our two parties had joined hands, his look and speech did not favour-

ably impress me, and I had the strange feeling that it would be wise to keep away from him. My first impressions of Dr. Sun Yat Sen are recorded in the following entries in my diary:

### Meetings at Headquarters

Sunday, 5th May, 1895 — *“Sun Yat Sen appears to be a rash and reckless man.<sup>2</sup> He would risk his life to make a name for “himself.” Sun proposes things that are subject to condemnation — he thinks he is able to do anything!”<sup>3</sup>*

Sunday, 23rd. June, 1895 — *“Sun has got Pro Bolshevik Russia and policy of World Revolution<sup>4</sup> on the brain, and is so ‘occupied’ at times, that he speaks and acts strangely! He will grow crazy yet. I for one could not trust him with the responsibility of the leadership of the Movement. One may think little of life, but in ‘acting’ it is highly necessary to see that the lives of the leaders are not needlessly sacrificed. I believe Sun wishes every one to listen to him. This is impossible, as, so far, his experience shows that it would be risky to rely solely upon him.”*

Consequently, after the failure of our first attempt, to capture Canton, and well knowing Dr. Sun Yat-sen’s character and disposition, and having already  
5 formed my opinion of his ability and worth, I declined to join his party, but quietly laboured through the English and Chinese press for the furtherance of the cause of reform and independence. And, not wishing to participate in party strife and civil war, which I foretold in letters to my friend the late Dr. G.E. Morrison (London *Times* correspondent), and which I knew would follow the assumption of the Presidency by the late Yuan Shih-kai, I retired from the political arena.

### The Downfall of Dr. Sun Yat-sen

Now that Dr. Sun Yat Sen in the wake of the Canton Saikwan Massacre of 1924<sup>5</sup> has been condemned and execrated by his countrymen at home and abroad, and fallen from the lofty pedestal upon which we all helped to place him, and whilst some of the leading participants in the great revolutionary drama are still

alive, I think I am now quite free to publish, in the interests of historical accuracy, the secret history of the Great Revolution, without being charged with the guilt of belittling or discrediting Dr. Sun Yat-sen in the eyes of his countrymen and the world.

It is this policy of justice and fair-play that has kept me waiting so many years and prevented me from satisfying the requests of my Chinese and European friends for the early publication of this history, and I trust the decision which has prompted me in the adoption of such a policy meets with their approbation, and that I am under no further moral obligation to remain silent.

### **Foreign Friends and Supporters**

In this brief history I shall recount without fear or favour the parts played by myself and my chivalrous English and Chinese friends and colleagues — Dr. G.E. Morrison, Dr. Timothy Richard, LL.D., Dr. Yung Wing, LL.D., Sir Kai Ho Kai, Kt., CM.G., D. Warres-Smith, Alfred Cunningham, Thomas H. Reid, T. Cowen, Chesney Duncan, Mrs. Archibald Little, B. A. Hale, Thomas Petrie, Sir Hiram S. Maxim, and Colin McD. Smart — from the year 1890 to the year 1912, when the Manchus were ousted from China and the Republic of China firmly established, and when I retired from the political arena.

I will not deal with the activities of Dr. Sun Yat Sen and others, since the date of the establishment of the Republic of China in 1912, as it is now history and the dramatic story from the assumption of the Presidency by Yuan Shih-kai in 1912 up to the war between the Chihli and Fengtien factions in 1924, can best be told by Dr. Sun Yat Sen and those militarists who participated in these thirteen years of civil war and bloodshed.

### **Appreciations**

Regarding my work, the following quotations may prove of interest:

- (1) *Of my work in Hongkong no one is better qualified to speak on my behalf than yourself. Were we not colleagues together, and*

*did we not use every effort in our power to promote the cause of progress in China? You know the risks — from the time the small Reform Committee met surreptitiously in the Colony you kept the flame burning at constant risk of your own freedom, your life, and of those you held dearest.*

*Mine was an easier part, to hammer away in the paper in the interests of Reform, and to influence the authorities. For years we worked together by means of the paper (Hongkong Daily Press and South China Morning Post) in the one cause.*

- 6 (Alfred Cunningham. — Editor of the *Hongkong Daily Press*, *South China Morning Post*, etc. Correspondent *Daily Mail*, *New York Sun*, etc. — May 4th., 1913.)

(2) *You have at least the great satisfaction of knowing that you assisted in placing four hundred millions of your fellow-men on the road to a better and more humane life, and in initiating a movement which will go down in history as one of the most momentous in the records of the World.*

(Thomas H. Reid — Editor of the Hongkong *China Mail*, 1894–1905, *Straits Times*, etc.; *London Times* correspondent for South China; Correspondent *The Standard*, *New York Herald*, etc. — November 29th., 1912).

(3) Having had the pleasure to reside fully forty years amongst you and having during that lengthy period had the honour and pleasure to help you in the efforts that were made many years ago to compass the extinction of the corrupt and despotic Manchu dynasty (as you will see from extracts from letters from *one of your most able leaders of that time* which I include in the appendices of this brochure) I venture to offer you advice at this critical juncture in world affairs which I verily believe must prove decidedly beneficial to you if you act upon it.



(From "The Way Out," 1919, by Chesney Duncan, Editor, *Hong-kong Telegraph* (1895), *Straits Echo* (1905) *Times of Malaya* (1907), *China Republican* (1913), *Malaya Tribune* (1915). Correspondent *London Globe*, *Japan Gazette*, *Shanghai Mercury*, *China Times*, *London Times*, *Straits Times*, etc.).

As this is only a brief history, I have been obliged to withhold interesting details, and to exclude hundreds of important letters and minor incidents connected with the Revolution.

## Introduction

### Biographical Sketch

Fifty three years ago on the 16th May, 1872, I was born in Sydney, New South Wales, Australia, my father Tse Yet-chong (謝日昌) otherwise John See, being proprietor of the Tai Yick-firm (泰益) of Importers and Exporters, and my mother Kwok Shi (郭氏) one of the first Chinese ladies to land in the Antipodes.

My father was a native of the Hoi Ping district (開平縣) of Kwang Tung Province (廣東省) and according to the genealogical record of the family, he traces his descent from San Pak (申伯) of the Feud of Tse (謝) of the Chow Dynasty (周朝).

According to my baptismal certificate, I was baptised on the 1st November, 1879, by my God-father, Bishop C.C. Greenway of the Church of England of Grafton, and subsequently I carried on a lengthy correspondence with him, and I believe that my strict moral rectitude and conduct in life have been due to his influence, and the education which I received at the Grafton High School.

Although I am a Christian, I am also a staunch supporter of Confucius and his teachings, and all that is wise and good in other religions.

My father was a God-fearing and upright man, a stern disciplinarian, and a man of few words; and as for my mother, she is a good and pious soul, and will soon see her 80th birthday, if God be pleased. 7

## **My Ambition**

My father was a leader of the Chinese Independence Party of Australia, and when I was about twelve years of age he told me the story of the cruel conquest of China by the Manchu Tartars, and I promised him that when I grew up, I would return to China and do my best to help in driving the usurping Manchu Tartars out of China. I have kept my promise, and this accounts for my past activities in connection with the movement for Reform and Independence in China.

My ambition has always been to work for China and the Chinese, but never to become a “party” official. I have friends in all the different political parties, but not a single enemy.

## **Sowing the Seed**

### **Arrival in China**

In the year 1887, when sixteen years of age, I left Sydney for China with my mother, two younger brothers and three sisters. What struck me on first landing in Hongkong on the 20th May, 1887, was the cramped pigeonholed houses, the narrow insanitary streets, and the total absence of shade trees.

My father’s old friends welcomed us all ashore, and we quickly found ourselves at home in a strange city with strange surroundings.

Shortly after settling down, I was introduced to Hon. Mr. J.H. Stewart Lockhart, now Sir J.H. Stewart Lockhart, KCMG, retired ex-Commissioner of Wei-hai-wei, who was then Registrar General of Hongkong. He received me very kindly and advised me to enter Queen’s College preparatory to joining the Hongkong Government service.

During my stay at Queen’s College, I made the acquaintance of a number of promising and patriotic young men inside and outside the College, and it began to dawn upon me that the time was ripe and opportune for planning and organizing a movement for the reformation of China’s millions, and for the expulsion of the usurping Manchu Tartars from China.

Chief of those of my sixteen friends who were in my confidence and knew my secret were Yeung Ku-wan (楊衢雲), Chan Fun (陳芬), Chau Chiu-ngok (周朝嶽) Wong Kwok-u (黃國瑜), Lo Man-yuk (羅文玉), and Lau In-bun (劉燕賓). The remainder were not let into the secret, as it was too dangerous to openly preach revolution at the time, and besides, the Colony of Hongkong was full of spies and secret agents of the Manchu Canton Government.

Accordingly we used to meet surreptitiously at Ping Kee shipping office, Praya Central, where Lau In-bun was chief shipping clerk, at the China Merchant's Steam Navigation Co., where Yeung Ku-wan was chief shipping clerk, at Gon Kee, the shipping office of Woo Gon-chi (胡幹芝), Compradore of Messrs. David Sassoon & Co., and at my own house, No. 11, Wing Shing Street.

## Difficulties and Dangers

So feared and dreaded were the Manchu Canton officials, and their spies and informers, that the people dared not talk of revolution or associate with people of revolutionary tendencies. Such was the state of public feeling during the years 1887 to 1895, when it was extremely difficult to gain recruits or even sympathisers. 8

We always met the taunts and ridicule of our chicken-hearted and doubting "friends" in silence. But nothing discouraged us, and we fearlessly and silently struggled on.

During all these long years of secret planning and organizing, I always used to mix up with the spies and secret agents of the Manchu Canton Government, and pay visits to their "haunts." I was persistently putting my head in the tiger's jaws!

How I bluffed and blinded them is a long story, and cannot be told in the pages of this short history.

My English friends and colleagues were just as shrewd and careful as myself, and we managed to keep everything secret and to ourselves.

## The Seed Germinates

On the 13th March 1892, we established our Revolutionary Headquarters on the first floor of No. 1, Pak Tze Lane (百子里), Hongkong, the second floor being occupied by Luk King-fo (陸敬科) and his friends of the "Lu Kui" Club.

Luk King-fo is, at present, an official of the Foreign Affairs Department at Canton, but was formerly a teacher of Queen's College, Hongkong.

We adopted as our motto "Ducit amor patriae" (盡心愛國<sup>6</sup>), and named our meeting place the "Foo Yan Man Ser" (輔仁文社), but this did not prevent it from being visited from time to time by European Police detectives, who were always welcome!

In the year 1894, Japan declared war against China, and the disgraceful defeat of China, followed by the "Boxer" rising, increased the growing discontent of the Chinese against the Manchu regime in China, and from this time onwards a new spirit was abroad in the land.

16th May, 1894. — I advocated in the *Hongkong Daily Press* the suppression of the Indian opium trade, and widely distributed my pamphlets in England and in China, I took a leading part in the formation of the Anti-Opium Society of South China in the year 1898.

30th May, 1894. — I protested in the *Hongkong Daily Press* against the slandering of the Chinese community; and for "dabbling in politics," whilst in the Government Service, I was reprimanded by the Colonial Secretary.

In the Spring of 1895, Yeung Ku-wan conferred with me, and we joined hands with Dr. Sun Yat Sen (孫逸仙) and his friends and established the Hing Chung Whui (興中會) revolutionary party. We established our new headquarters at No. 13, Staunton Street, and named the meeting place the "Kuen Hang" (乾享) Club. We frequently interviewed the late Sir Kai Ho Kai, Kt., C.M.G. (何啟大壯士), and he secretly promised us his support. We also succeeded in obtaining the secret support of the Editors of the *China Mail* and *Hongkong Telegraph*

Thomas H. Reid, Editor of the *China Mail*, and Chesney Duncan, Editor of the *Hongkong Telegraph*, were the first to openly and fearlessly champion the great cause in their newspapers, and at a time when nearly everybody ridiculed

the movement.

On one occasion, Chesney Duncan was called before the Colonial Secretary, who reprimanded him for what he had published, claiming that it amounted to incitement of the Chinese to revolt against a Government with which Great Britain was on friendly terms. In spite of such warnings, I am proud to record that their faithfulness and loyalty has never swerved. 9

## Organizing the Revolution

*(Abstracts from Diaries and Correspondence.)*

12th March, 1895. — Dr. Ho Kai's "Reform" article published by the *China Mail*. Dr. Ho Kai was a Barrister and a member of the Hongkong Legislative Council, representing the Chinese. He was a man of sound judgment and ripe experience.

13th. March, 1895. — Yeung Ku-wan, Dr. Sun Yat Sen, Wong Wing-sheung, and Tse Tsan-tai confer together *re* organization of the movement to capture Canton. Wong Wing-sheung (黃詠商) was the second son of the late Hon. Wong Shing (黃勝), member of the Hongkong Legislative Council.

16th March, 1895. — Yeung Kuwan , Dr. Sun Yat Sen and Tse Tsan-tai discuss plans for an attempt to capture Canton with 3,000 picked men.

We obtain the secret support of the Japanese Government through the Japanese Consul.

We adopt as the design of our flag, *a white sun on a blue ground*.

Dr. Ho Kai accepts responsibility for the work of drafting proclamations, etc.

Thomas H. Reid, Editor of the *China Mail*, interviewed, and he promises us his support.

18th March, 1895. — The China Mail publishes a lengthy article in our support.

21st March, 1895. — Yeung Kuwan, Dr. Sun Yat Sen, Wong Wing-sheung and Tse Tsan-tai confer with Chesney Duncan, Editor of the *Hongkong Telegraph*, at No. 13, Staunton Street. He assured us of his support.

The *Hongkong Telegraph* supports our movement.

## Manifesto to Emperor Kwang Hsu

30th May, 1895. — Tse Tsan-tai's "Open Letter" to the Manchu Emperor Kwang Hsu published in the *China Mail*, *Hongkong Telegraph*, and other newspapers of Singapore and the Far East. This "manifesto" was broadcasted by means of the English and foreign newspapers in order to search the hearts of the Chinese at home and abroad.

27th August, 1895. — Plans for the capture of Canton being completed, orders were given for the closing of the "Kuen Hang" Club at No. 13, Staunton Street.

29th August, 1895.— Yeung Ku-wan, Dr. Sun Yat Sen, Wong Wing-sheung, Chan Siu-pak (陳少白), Dr. Ho Kai, Thomas H. Reid and Tse Tsan-tai meet at Hang Fa Lau Hotel. Dr. Ho Kai acted as spokesman, and we outlined the policy of the Provisional Government. Thomas H. Reid agreed to do his best to work for the sympathy and support of the British Government and the people of England.

9th October, 1895. — Our proclamation to the Foreign Powers drafted by Thomas H. Reid and T. Cowen, and revised by Dr. Ho Kai and Tse Tsan-tai.

## President of Provisional Govt.

10th October, 1895. — Yeung Ku-wan elected President of the "Provisional Government," preparatory to the attempt to capture Canton.

[*Note:* The election of Yeung Ku-wan as President greatly displeased Dr. Sun Yat Sen, and it always rankled in his breast. On the 12th October 1896, Wong Wing-sheung (second son of Hon. Wong Shing) remarked, when strongly  
10 censuring Dr. Sun Yat Sen for his incapacity: "I will have nothing to do with Sun in the future."]

On the 26th October, 1895, we made our first attempt to capture Canton, but owing to our plans being divulged to the Canton authorities by traitors in Hongkong, the attempt ended in failure. Numerous arrests and executions

followed. Yow Lit (尤烈) and others escaped.

Dr. Sun Yat Sen and Chan Siu-pak succeeded in escaping to Macao, and from thence they proceeded to Japan.

Dr. Sun Yat Sen was subsequently kidnapped in London on 11th October, 1896, by the Manchu Chinese Legation officials, and rescued by his friend Dr. James Cantlie, who was his old teacher in the Medical College in Hongkong.

## Party Split Up

On the 13th November 1895, Yeung Ku-wan left Hongkong for Saigon, after returning from Macao. From Saigon Yeung Ku-wan proceeded to Singapore, Madras, Colombo and South Africa, where he established revolutionary juntas of the "Hing Chung Whui" (興中會), as advised by me. Before Yeung Ku-wan left for the Straits Settlements and South Africa, it was agreed between us that in order to preserve secrecy all our letters should be numbered.

On his way back from South Africa, Yeung Ku-wan established revolutionary *juntas* in Singapore and the Straits Settlements, and obtained the co-operation and support of the anti-Manchu secret societies. Immediately after Yeung Ku-wan reached Japan, emissaries were despatched to the Yangtze Valley provinces and the United States of America with copies of our "manifesto" and other revolutionary literature, and they succeeded in obtaining the co-operation and support of all the anti-Manchu "Tongs" and secret societies in these places.

It was from these sources that much of the fighting material was obtained, during the stirring days of the revolution.

During Yeung Ku-wan absence in the Straits Settlements and South Africa, Dr. Sun Yat Sen and his partisans had been busy organizing the "Tung Meng Whui" (同盟會) in Japan. As I know very little about the affairs of this organization, I leave Dr. Sun Yat Sen and his followers to fill up the gap.

## Unification of Parties

### Meeting Between Kang Yu-wei and Tse Tsan-tai

On the 21st February, 1896, I met Kang Yu-wei's (康有為) brother Kang Kwang-jin (康廣仁) and other members of Kang Yu-wei's party at a dinner at the Bun Fong restaurant given by my friends and colleagues Chan Kam-to (Dr. Chen Chin-tao) (陳錦濤), and Leung Lan-fan (Liang Lan-hsun) (梁蘭芬). Dr. Chen Chin-tao was at one time Minister of Finance, and Liang Lan-hsun, Chinese Consul for Australia. We discussed "reforms, and the importance of union and co-operation." Not being a "party" man myself, I strongly advised the union and co-operation of the different political parties working for the salvation of China, and this has always been my policy. *"Unification of parties and Unification of*  
 11 *China"* has always been my watchword.

On the 4th October, 1896, I met Kang Yu-wei at the Wai Shing Tea Hong in Queen's Road Central by arrangement. We discussed the political situation in China, and I counselled union and co-operation in the great work of reform. Kang Yu-wei outlined his scheme of reform, which is too long to be recorded in these pages. It will appear in the complete history. We agreed to unite and co-operate, after a confidential exchange of views.

### Kang Yu-wei

The following pen picture of Kang Yu-wei is from my diary of this date:

Kang Yu-wei is 43 years of age and a native of the Nam-hoi district of Kwang Tung province. He appears to be a man of superior intelligence. He is learned and experienced, and possesses an excellent all-round knowledge. He possesses a highly retentive memory, and is a great lover of books. He is always busy investigating, and searching for knowledge, in all its branches. He is the most learned progressive 'Chinese scholar' of modern China. It is said that he remembers all that he reads. He is often styled by his disciples and pupils 'Kang



Fuzi,' — the 'New Confucius'! The Chinese *literati* hate him.

He has reviewed the works of Confucius, in many volumes, and for this he has been censured by the Throne. The publication of his works has been forbidden in China.

Kang is of middle stature. He is stout and strong, and looks healthy. His eyes are dark and brilliant, and his glance is quiet and sharp: his eyebrows are black, well-arched and high. His complexion is dark, and his forehead is high and well-formed, as also are his nose and thick lipped mouth. His upper lip is surmounted by well trimmed black moustaches, and his ears are small but well formed. Some of his fingers (third and fourth of his left hand) grow long nails! His head and hands are not large, but are well formed and shaped. The expression of his face is keen, intelligent and fascinating. The glitter of his dark eye-balls was striking. His bearing is proud and independent. At a glance one can see that he is not a "man of the common herd."

### **Meeting Between Tse Tsan-tai and Kang Kwang-jin**

On the 21st March, 1897, Leung Lan-fan brought Kang Youwei's brother Kang Kwang-jin and a follower named Ho Jeong (何章易一) to see me.

We discussed the political situation and the importance of union and co-operation. On the 29th, September, 1897, Kang Kwang-jin and I met by arrangement, and had a long confidential chat in the Public Gardens of Hongkong, under the big pine tree in the East corner, below the fountain. We agreed to work for union and cooperation and Kang Kwang-jin promised to discuss the matter seriously with his brother Kang Yu-wei. The following is from my diary of this date:

Kang Kwang-jin said: 'Yes, I quite agree with you, let us unite. What is the use of a body without a leg and a hand? I shall be glad to place your views before my brother, and I am certain he will be

pleased to favour them. Yes, we should get the 'superior' men of both parties together, and hold a conference. We desire to see a 'peaceful' revolution for the good of the Empire and its millions, but still we must be prepared to act at any moment! I do not favour 'desperate' attempts at 'reform.'

Men like Sun Yat Sen frighten me—they spoil everything. We cannot combine with such rash and reckless men. Yeung Ku-wan is a good man, and I hope to meet him yet. It is a pity we cannot get more able men to push the Movement. My brother and I are doing our best, but we are afraid we cannot accomplish much. There is an understanding between Chang Chitung (張之洞), Viceroy of the Liang Hu provinces, and us. And besides him there are many other sympathizers amongst the officials. My brother is afraid to make himself too conspicuous, and is consequently working very quietly. It would be ruinous to our party if my brother got into trouble. My brother has numerous enemies, and they would seize any opportunity to bring about his downfall. So you see we must be very shrewd. No one must be able to say that ours is an anti-dynastic or revolutionary movement! *We can save China.*

## A Political Confession

Kang Kwang-jin confessed to me that he was not pro-Manchu, and that he and his brother were trying to bring about a "peaceful" revolution in favour of the Chinese. This confession has been verified by the Ta Tung revolutionary movement of August 1900.

Before separating, Kang Kwang-jin exclaimed: "What is our duty? We are born in this world to do our duty, which is to, do all we can for our fellowmen before we die."

Alas, my poor friend Kang Kwang-jin was one of those reformers who lost their lives during the Empress Dowager's coup d'état of 21st September, 1898. Little did he dream that his last words to me would come true so soon!

Kang Kwang-jin was honest and sincere, and a true patriot.

1st October, 1897. — Kang Kwang-jin leaves Hongkong for Shanghai by s.s. "Loong Moon" to meet his brother and Liang Chi-chao (梁啟超). Liang Chi-chao is a noted Chinese scholar and Politician, and the chief disciple of Kang Yu-wei.

3rd. October, 1897. — I communicate the result of my interview with Kang Kwang-jin to Yeung Ku-wan in South Africa, he having announced to me his safe arrival in a letter dated 7th January, 1897.

20th October, 1897. — I receive a letter from Yeung Ku-wan (28/8/97) informing me of the date of his departure for China, and reporting the establishment of a revolutionary *junta* in Johannesburg.

8th November, 1897. — Kang Kwang-jin informs me by letter from Shanghai that Liang Chi-chao is in favour of union and co-operation.

25th November, 1897. — Yeung Ku-wan leaves Durban, South Africa, for Colombo, the Straits Settlements, Rangoon, Hongkong and Japan.

## The Hongkong Chinese Club

9th January, 1898. — I founded the Hongkong Chinese Club with Cheung Tsoi (張才), Luk King-fo and Leung Lan-fan. See Hongkong newspapers of 9th January, 1898. 13

2nd February, 1898. — I meet Dr. Timothy Richard LL. D., at the London Mission House in Bonham Road. We discussed reform in China, and he promised to give the reform movement his strong support.

11th March, 1898. — Yeung Ku-wan arrives in Hongkong Harbour on board the s.s. "Wakasa Maru." I meet him on board ship and inform him of the result of my interview with the brothers Kang Yu-wei and Kang Kwang-jin. I also give him advice regarding the organizing of the Revolution, and remind him of the importance of obtaining the co-operation and support of the anti-Manchu secret societies in the Straits Settlements, the Yangtze Valley provinces, and the United States. (See also my letters No. 12 of 4th March, 1898; No. 25 of 13th October, 1898; No. 26 of 22nd September, 1898, and No. 33 of 7th August, 1899). Yeung

Ku-wan sailed direct for Japan to confer with Dr. Sun Yat Sen.

### **Anti-footbinding Society.**

12 th March, 1898. — Kang Kwang-jin writes to me from Shanghai asking me for Yeung Ku-wan address. I reply and at the same time advise the formation of a society for the suppression of footbinding in China.

21st March, 1898. — Yeung Ku-wan arrives in Yokohama.

25th March, 1898. — I interview Thomas H. Reid, and the *China Mail* publishes a leading article in support of the reform movement.

29th March, 1898. — Kang Kwang-jin writes to me from Peking expressing his anxiety to meet Yeung Ku-wan.

24th July, 1898. — Kang Kwang-jin writes to me again from Peking expressing his anxiety to hear from Yeung Ku-wan, to whom I had already written conveying to him Kang Kwang-jin's friendly desires.

### **Empress Dowager's Coup D'état.**

21st September, 1898. — Empress Dowager's *coup d'état*.

Kang Yu-wei and Liang Chi-chao succeeded in escaping from Peking, but Kang Kwang-jin, Tan Sze-tung, Liu Kwang-ti, Yang Tzwei, Yang Shih-shen and Lin Shio were seized and executed without trial.

I will leave the story of the Empress Dowager's *coup d'état* and the events which followed to be, written by my old friend Kang Yu-wei and his chief disciple Liang Chi-chao.

29th September, 1898. — Kang Yu-wei arrives in Hongkong, and after a short stay leaves for Japan by s.s. "Kawachi Maru," on 19th October, 1898.

When Kang Yu-wei landed, he was befriended by my old friend Ho Tung (何東), now Sir Robert Ho Tung, Kt., who extended to him his friendly hospitality, in spite of the hostility of the Manchu Peking Government and its myrmidons at Canton.

Sir Robert has always been the friend of the reformers, and he is still unsparing in his time and energy in China's welfare.

8th October, 1898. — I discuss with Dr. Ho Kai the political situation and our prospects of success.

### Martyrdom of Kang Kwang-jin

5th December, 1898. — In reply to my enquiries of 17th October, 1898, regarding my friend Kang Kwang-jin, Dr. Timothy Richard writes to me from Shanghai informing me of the safe and satisfactory disposal of Kang Kwang-jin's body, and he also deals with the question of the salvation of China as follows: 14

Shanghai, Dec. 15th, 1898.

Tse Tsan-tai, Esq.,

Dear Sir, — I am in receipt of your letter of the 6th inst. making enquiries about your friend.

I did all I could through a friend in Peking and since then I have written to him (your friend) direct saying that everything has been arranged satisfactorily about his poor brother for the present.

I gave him details.

As to the other question for the salvation of China, I am doing all in my power. But the Manchus refuse *light* and will not invite the help of *friendly* foreigners. Some of the leading Chinese also have published documents in which they insult the best men of the West. They want to learn foreign military and naval affairs: they want to open mines *in order* to have funds *to fight the foreigners and drive them all out of China*. It is this want of friendliness on the part of the Manchus and some of the leading mandarins and even *hatred of all foreigners* which makes it impossible that God should give power to them.

It is such principles which destroy China most of all. The salvation of China as well as of the whole world lies in the cultivation, not of militarism, but of friendship. Let the best people of China and of the West persevere in their good work of making *peace* and *goodwill* and *goodness* their chief aim, then prosperity will in due time follow.

But if nations only seek their *own national interests first*, then no matter how great they are, and whether they are Chinese or European nations, they cannot last long when they make righteousness a secondary aim. Be not weary in well doing.

With best wishes for yourself and your country, — I remain, Yours Sincerely,

Timothy Richard.

(This letter is mentioned in Professor William E. Soothill's book "Timothy Richard of China" (Page 242). Professor W.E. Soothill is Professor of Chinese in the University of Oxford.)

## Union and Co-Operation

### Progress in the Yangtze Provinces

9th December, 1898. — Letter No. 29, dated Yokohama, 24th November 1898, received from Yeung Ku-wan informing me of the success of our plans, and the co-operation of the Hunan "reformers."

Yeung Ku-wan also informs me that there may be difficulty in uniting the two parties owing to *selfishness and jealousy*.

24th December, 1898. — I send a letter to Kang Yu-wei in Japan outlining my policy and strongly advising union and co-operation in the movement for Freedom and Independence.

9th January, 1899. — Kang Yu-wei writes to me from Japan expressing his concurrence with my policy of union and co-operation in the work of "reform."

1st March, 1899. — I write to Kang Yu-wei urging upon him the importance of union and co-operation and advising him to come to an understanding with Yeung Ku-wan and his friends in Japan.

28th March, 1899. — Liang Chi-chao writes to me from Tokio, Japan, expressing his concurrence with my policy of union and co-operation and informing me of Kang Yu-wei's departure for the United States. 15

17th April, 1899. — I send a reply to Liang Chi-chao's letter impressing upon him the great importance of union and co-operation.

23rd April, 1899. — Yeung Ku-wan writes to me from Yokohama informing me that the members of Kang Yu-wei's party favour union and co-operation, and that Japanese friends and supporters have also advised the union of the two parties.

### **Meeting between Yeung Ku-wan and Liang Chi-chao**

19th June, 1899. — I received from Yeung Ku-wan letter No. 31 dated Yokohama, 6th June, 1899, informing me of a meeting between him and Liang Chi-chao in the office of Messrs. Kingsell and Co., in Yokohama.

Yeung Ku-wan writes:

He (Liang Chi-chao) advised me to try my best to go on with the work of our party and he will try his best to go on with the work of his party. He does not like to co-operate with us yet. Hong's party are too proud and jealous of our Chinese English scholars. They don't like to have the same rank as us; they always aspire to governing us or want us all to submit to them. They do not know what justice means, as Mr. U Lai-un (胡禮垣) remarked in the 'Sun Ching On Hang,' (book), and I have heard several wise Hunan men make similar remarks concerning them.

*Note.* — My old friend the late U Lai-un was a great thinker and philosopher,

and collaborated with the late Sir Kai Ho Kai in translating and writing many works on reform, which were read with avidity by Kang Yu-wei and his disciples.

He led the life of a recluse, and was a staunch supporter of the Cause of Reform and Independence in China.

I succeeded in bringing the “leaders” together, and did my best to unite two parties, but their failure to bring about the much desired union of the two parties is most regrettable. It has all been a game of selfish political chess and scheming to become “top dog!”

## A Political Cartoon

19th July, 1899. — I design and publish a political cartoon — “The Situation in the Far East” — which appeared in many foreign illustrated newspapers. This cartoon was designed to arouse the Chinese nation, and to warn the people of the impending danger of the partitioning of the Empire by the Foreign Powers.

I allowed Yeung Ku-wan to publish in Japan a coloured travesty of my cartoon, which led to my being questioned by the Colonial Secretary of Hong-kong.

3rd August, 1899. — I receive letter No. 32, dated Yokohama, 27th July, 1899, from Yeung Ku-wan enclosing copies of revolutionary propaganda, which have been circulated broadcast exhorting the people of China to rise and rebel against the Manchu usurpers.

31st August, 1899.— I receive letter No. 33, dated Yokohama, 19th August, 1899, from Yeung Ku-wan informing me that revolutionary “exhortations” have been sent to partisans in America, Honolulu, Australia, the Straits Settlements, Bangkok, Saigon, and Canada, in the name of the Republican Party (“Chung Kwok Hop Chung Ching Fu Ser Whui”) (中國合衆府政社會) of China.



## The “Po Wang Whui” Society

4th November, 1899. — I write to Kang Yu-wei severely denouncing his “Protect the Emperor” (Po Wang Whui) Society (會皇保).

6th November, 1899. — Letter No. 34, dated Yokohama 28/10/99, received from Yeung Ku-wan enclosing printed copies of revolutionary manifesto and circular letters, and reporting the successful progress of the work of partisans in the Yangtze provinces, and other parts of the world. Kang Yu-wei’s “Po Wang Whui” (Protect the Emperor Society) is also denounced and exposed by Yeung Ku-wan.

19th November, 1899. — Hung Chun-fui (洪春魁), alias Hung Wo (洪和), alias Hung Chuen-Fook (洪全福) calls to see my father and I make his acquaintance, my father having previously spoken to me about him.

Hung Chun-fui was a nephew of Hung Hsiu-chuan, the “Tai Ping” king. He had travelled rather extensively, and possessed a thorough knowledge of men and world affairs. Later on, I sounded Hung Chuen-Fook, and he agreed to join me and undertake the task of organizing a force for the capture of Canton City.

21st December, 1899. — Imperial Edict issued for the arrest of Kang Yu-wei and Liang Chi-chao.

## Second Attempt to Capture Canton

### A Commonwealth Government

On making Hung Chuen-Fook’s acquaintance on the 19th November, 1899, and discovering he had had considerable military training and experience in the armies of his uncle Hung Hsiu-chuan (洪秀全), the “Tai Ping” king, I decided to plan and organize another attempt to capture Canton and establish Commonwealth Government under a “Protector,” as I was of the opinion that the “Republican form of government” was too advanced for China and the Chinese. Accordingly, I consulted my father, and he approved of my decision to entrust Hung Chuen-Fook with the task of organizing the revolutionary army. The sinews

of war were supplied by Li Pak (李北) alias Li Ki-tong (李紀堂 who had already sacrificed a fortune in the revolutionary cause. Li Pak was one of the greatest financial supporters of the Revolution, a fact which it is my pleasing duty to record.

24th January, 1900. — Yeung Ku-wan arrives in Hongkong from Japan per s.s. "Kamakura Maru." He informed me that the Hunanese members of the revolutionary party were actively organizing in Hunan and Hupeh provinces in the disguise of monks, and that many Japanese were also supporting us.

Yeung Ku-wan surprised me by telling me that Dr. Sun Yat Sen had demanded that he should resign the leadership of the party in his favour. He said: "We were dangerously near being split up in-to two parties some time ago. Dr. Sun Yat Sen informed me one day that the "Ko Lao Whui" (哥老會) party of the Yangtze provinces had appointed him "President." and hinted that as there could not be two Presidents, it would be obligatory for me to work independently, if I would not recognize him in his new position. I confessed to Sun Yat Sen that  
17 I was quite pleased to resign my position, and advised him not to encourage separation. I also informed him that I was always willing to sacrifice my life, let alone my position, for the good of the cause. We must obey the people's will, I said. I also told him that I was not particular who was appointed President so long as the movement progressed successfully under his leadership. Dr. Sun has requested me to ask if you are in favour of this change and recognize his appointment." (See my diary.)

In order to prevent party strife, I advised Yeung Ku-wan to resign the Presidency in favour of Dr. Sun Yat Sen.

6th February, 1900. — Yeung Ku-wan invited me to join the new Revolutionary Party — "Tung Meng Whui" (同盟會), which had been organized by Dr. Sun Yat Sen and his partisans in Japan. Owing to the usurpation of Yeung Ku-wan's position by Dr. Sun, I declined this invitation to join his new party. And disapproving of Dr. Sun's high-handed behaviour, I decided to act independently.

9th February, 1900. — I broadcasted my letter "*Liberty, Freedom and Reform*" from Canton, in anticipation of the success of the second attempt to

capture Canton City, and in order to “blaze the trail” and “clear the way.” Those were the days, when things had to be accomplished in round-about ways!

## The Rescue of King Lien-shan

### Tse Tsan-tai Meets Mrs. Archibald Little

26th February, 1900. I meet Mrs. Archibald Little at the Chinese Club (Hongkong), where she lectured on the evils of foot-binding. Mrs. Little appointed my wife local Secretary of the Anti-Footbinding Society. Mrs. Little helped me to obtain the release of the reformer King Lien-shan (經蓮山) from “Monte Forte” Prison, Macao, by influencing H.E. Sir Henry Blake and Lady Blake to send friendly representations to the Governor of Macao. My friends D. Warres Smith and Alfred Cunningham, Editors of the *Hongkong Daily Press*, and Thomas H. Reid, Editor of the *China Mail*, also interested themselves in the case, and published strong leading articles in their newspapers advocating the early liberation of the prisoner.

King Lien-shan was Manager of the Imperial Chinese Telegraph Administration at Shanghai, and was arrested in Macao by the Portuguese authorities on the false charge of embezzling the funds of the Administration which was made by the Chinese authorities. King Lien-shan was the man who sent the telegram from Shanghai urging the Empress Dowager not to depose the Emperor Kwang Hsu. This telegram was signed by “King Lien-shan and 1,231 others.”

The news of King Lien-shan’s arrest and imprisonment was brought to me by my old friend Tsu Sien-ting (徐善亭) who was a staunch supporter of the cause of Reform and Independence.

The following letters from Mrs. Archibald Little and Mr. D. Warres Smith are interesting:

Government House, Hongkong,  
Tuesday, (27/2/1900).

Dear Mr. Tse Tsan-tai. — The meeting on Thursday is for all

18 Chinese ladies bound and unbound who will like to come. And Lady Blake particularly hopes to see your wife as I do too.

I am writing two letters to high officials at Macao about your friend. Therefore excuse haste.—Yours sincerely,

ALICE LITTLE.

*Hongkong Daily Press Office,*  
Hongkong, 3rd. March, 1900.

Tse Tsan-tai Esq.,

Dear Sir, — I am afraid that there is not a ghost of a chance of anything any or all of the foreign papers may say, having the most distant effect, direct or indirect, but we will do our best.

I hardly think the Macao Government will defy both European and Chinese public opinion by giving up Mr. King Lien-shan. I am going to endeavour to send a reporter to the trial in Macao. We happen to have no suitable man on our staff, but will write to Macao to-day to see if I can get a man there to do it. — Yours truly,

D. WARRES SMITH.

28th February, 1900. — My father, Yeung Ku-wan and I hold a conference, and we discuss the political situation in China, and the cure for China's ills.

5th March, 1900. — Li Pak calls to see me, and we discuss the political situation.

31st March, 1900. — I meet Dr. Yung Wing, LL.D. (容宏博士) at Thomas's Hotel, and we discuss the political situation.

2nd. April, 1900. — Dr. Yung Wing and I have a long confidential talk. Dr. Yung Wing agrees with my policy of union and co-operation under able Christian leadership.

Dr. Yung Wing said: "I have not met Dr. Sun Yat Sen yet. What is his age? I don't think much of Sun as he is too rash."

Dr. Yung Wing, LL.D., was a graduate of Yale University, and was a true lover of his people. He was the man who brought one of the first relays of Chinese students to the United States to be educated, amongst them being the well-known statesman and politician Tang Shao-yi (唐紹儀) and it was mainly through his influence that the famous Educational Mission was sent to the United States in 1870. This may be considered the great work of Dr. Yung Wing's life. In 1864 he prepared the way for the foundation of the Kiang Nan Arsenal, and the China Merchants Steamship Co. (1870). In 1876 he was appointed Associate Chinese Minister together with Chin Lan-pin to Washington, U.S.A.

3rd April, 1900. — I arrange a confidential meeting between Dr. Yung Wing and Yeung Ku-wan with the object of hastening union and co-operation.

4th April, 1900. — Dr. Yung Wing leaves for the United States by the s.s. "Empress of China." I write to Dr. Sun Yat Sen advising him to meet Dr. Yung Wing in Japan.

11th April, 1900. — Dr. Ho Kai and I discuss the political situation, and the prospects of the success of the revolutionary movement.

### **The Wei Chow Movement**

18th April, 1900. — Yung Ku-wan calls to see me. In order to prevent selfish rivalry and jealousy between the leaders of the different parties, I strongly advised that Dr. Yung Wing, LL.D., be elected President of the United Reform Parties. Yeung Ku-wan informs me that the work of organizing the Wei Chow Movement movement is progressing rapidly and smoothly. 18

22nd April, 1900. — Li Pak joins the revolutionary party.

26th April, 1900. — Yeung Ku-wan leaves for Japan by s.s. "Awa Maru," to confer with Dr. Sun Yat Sen.

6th May, 1900. — Chan Siu-pak, Li Pak and I confer re the Wei Chow Movement.

6th June, 1900. — Letter dated Yokohama 26/5/1900 received from Yeung

Ku-wan informing me of his decision to visit Australia and the United States.

17th June, 1900. — Yeung Ku-wan and Dr. Sun Yat Sen arrive in Hongkong from Japan by the s.s. "Indus," and are accompanied by a party of Japanese friends and supporters. Yeung Ku-wan, Dr. Sun Yat Sen, Chan Siu-pak, Cheung Sau-por, Hiriyama (平山) and I meet in a sampan alongside the s.s. "Indus" and hold a one hour's conference.

Yeung Ku-wan and Dr. Sun Yatsen assured us of the support of the Japanese Government.

It was decided to start active operations without delay. Yeung Ku-wan landed in Hongkong, and Dr. Sun Yat Sen proceeded to the Straits Settlements.

### **Li Hung-chang's Trap**

On the day of their arrival in Hongkong, Li Hung-chang (李鴻章), Viceroy of Canton, laid a trap for the kidnapping of Yeung Ku-wan and Dr. Sun Yat Sen.

They were invited to a "conference" on board the Canton gunboat "On Lan," but were warned in time by their Japanese friends, who frustrated the attempt to kidnap them.

25th June, 1900. — Colin McD. Smart of the *China Mail* editorial staff called to see me. He assured me of his support, saying that he would follow in Thomas H. Reid's footsteps.

1st July, 1900. — Yeung Ku-wan and I meet our Japanese friends and supporters, M. Fukumoto, Macamoto Ntoo, Y. Osaki, Capt. S. Hara, M. Itoh, and H. Iwasaki at the Hongkong Hotel. We discussed the political situation in China.

M. Fukumoto assured us of the support of himself and his friends and said, "We are prepared to shed our blood for your cause."

2nd July, 1900. — M. Fukumoto and his friends leave for Saigon by the s.s. "Laos" to meet Dr. Sun Yat Sen.

17th July, 1900. — Dr. Sun Yat Sen and his friends arrive in Hongkong by the s.s. "Sado Maru," but he is forbidden to land by the Hongkong Government.

20th July, 1900. — Dr. Sun Yat Sen leaves for Japan by s.s. "Sado Maru."

21st July, 1900. — Dr. Ho Kai reports that Sir Henry A. Blake is in favour of a Southern Republic for China.

1st August, 1900. — Dr. Ho Kai's article based on the terms of our political programme is published by the *China Mail*.

2nd. August, 1900. — Dr. Ho Kai and I discuss the terms of our Programme and Appeal to the Foreign Powers.

21st August, 1900. — I advocate religious toleration and the establishment of an independent Christian Church for China. See letters to Rt. Rev. Bishop Hoare, D.D., Dr. Timothy Richard, LL.D., and Pastor Kranz.

22nd August, 1900. — Dr. Ho Kai's "Open Letter" signed "Sinensis" appears in the *China Mail*.

20

## The Ta Tung Movement

26th August, 1900. — Kang Yu-wei and his followers unsuccessfully planned a revolutionary movement at Ta Tung (大通) in Anhui province and Hankow in Hupeh province. Dr. Yung Wing LL. D., (容宏博士) and his nephew Yung Sing-kiu (容星橋) were connected with this movement, and narrowly escaped with their lives.

11th September, 1900. — Owing to the failure of the Ta Tung Movement Dr. Yung Wing flees from Shanghai, and arrives in Hongkong by s.s. "Empress of Japan."

Tang Tsai-chang (唐才常), the leader, and others were captured and beheaded.

5th October, 1900. — Flag of Independence unfurled at Wei Chow by General Cheng Put-san (鄭弼臣).

The movement is supported by the *China Mail*, *Hongkong Telegraph*, and *Hongkong Daily Press*

28th October, 1900. — Sze Kin-yu (史堅如) attempts to blow up Viceroy Tak Sau's (德壽) yamen at Canton, and is arrested and executed.

7th November, 1900. — The Wei Chow movement collapses through shortage of ammunition and men.

28th November, 1900. — Viceroy Tak Sau issues a proclamation, denouncing Yeung Ku-wan and other reformers.

### **Assassination of Yeung Ku-wan**

10th January, 1901. — Yeung Ku-wan is assassinated in his schoolroom at No. 52, Gage Street, Hongkong. The assassins escaped to Canton.

Yeung Ku-wan was a noble-minded man, and was heart and soul a devoted adherent of the Cause. It may be truthfully said of him that he was one of the noblest of China's patriots, who suffered martyrdom in the cause of Freedom and Independence.

Yeung Ku-wan body has been buried in the Protestant Cemetery at Hongkong, and the story of his life and work has still to be written.

1st March, 1901. — I receive a letter from Dr. Sun Yat Sen dated Yokohama, 13/2/1901, deeply regretting the assassination of Yeung Ku-wan, and forwarding obituary notices for distribution.

25th May, 1901. — I have a confidential talk with Alfred Cunningham, Editor of the *Hongkong Daily Press*, re the movement for Freedom and Independence.

23rd September, 1901. — King Lien-shan calls personally to see me, and to tender thanks to all those who interested themselves in his case, and helped to obtain his release from Monte Forte prison, Macao.

### **Second Attempt to Capture Canton**

26th September, 1901. — I confer with Li Pak , who expresses his willingness to join me in organizing another attempt to capture Canton City and establish a Provisional Government with Dr. Yung Wing LL.D. as President.

We decide to place the task of recruiting and organizing the fighting forces in the hands of Hung Chuen-Fook.



3rd October, 1901. — Ng Lo-sam (吳老三) alias Ng Sui-sang (吳瑞生), is banished from Hongkong for being connected with the the assassination of Yeung Ku-wan.

7th October, 1901. — I discuss with Hung Chuen-Fook the plans for capturing Canton.

13th October, 1901. — I discuss with my father the organization of the movement for the capture of Canton. 21

25th October, 1901.—I discuss with Dr. Ho Kai the organization of the movement for Freedom and Independence.

30th October, 1901. — Hung Chuen-Fook, Li Pak and I meet to discuss plans for the capture of Canton and the establishing of a provisional government.

### **Interview with Dr. G.E. Morrison**

22nd November, 1901. — I meet Dr. G.E. Morrison, *London Times* correspondent, at the Hongkong Hotel.

We discuss the movement of Freedom and Independence and he assured me of his friendly sympathy and support. He said: "I am quite willing to help you and shall do my best to further and support the movement. My support means the support of the *Times*, and the support of the *Times* means the support of the British people. My policy is the *Times* policy."

Dr. Morrison advocated in strong terms the removal of the old Empress Dowager. He told me of his friend J. O. P. Bland's timely rescue of Kang Yu-wei at Woosung.

The following is my pen picture of Dr. G.E. Morrison:

Dr. Morrison is a man who commands attention by his distinguished appearance and fine presence. He is tall and close-shaven, with a bold, broad and commanding brow, large eyes with a piercing look, straight eye-brows, long nose, and firm mouth with thin lips.

His hair is light, and he is a fine looking type of Australian manhood.

I found him polished, genial and affable, and a man possessing great common-sense and decision of character.

26th December, 1901. — Dr. Yung Wing LL.D. arrives in Hongkong bound for the United States. I send him confidential instructions through Li Pak .

16th January, 1902. — I receive a letter from D. Warres Smith, dated London 13th December 1901, acknowledging receipt of King Lien-shan's letter of thanks and gratitude.

18th January, 1902. — I receive a letter from Dr. Timothy Richard, dated Shanghai, 13th. January 1902. He wrote:

May all your efforts in behalf of Reform in your country be also abundantly blessed.

28th January, 1902. — Dr. Sun Yat Sen arrives in Hongkong by the s.s. "Yawata Maru," and stays at No. 24, Stanley Street.

3rd February, 1902. — Dr. Sun Yat Sen leaves Hongkong.

1st April, 1902. — I receive a letter from Dr. G.E. Morrison, dated Peking 17th March, 1902, sending me his address and enquiring for "news" of the movement.

16th April, 1902. — My letter "Manchu Rule" appears in the *Hongkong Telegraph*.

As we depended upon the anti-Manchu secret societies to furnish the fighting material for the Revolution, I frequently contributed articles and letters to the foreign newspapers in their support.

16th May, 1902. — Dr. Yung Wing leaves for the United States by the s.s. "Gaelic."

22 23rd May, 1902. — I receive a letter from D. Warres Smith, dated *Hongkong Daily Press* office, London, 25th April, 1902, assuring me of his support.

6th June, 1902. — I advocate popular representation for Chinese in Hongkong. See *Hongkong Daily Press* of 6th June, 1902.

9th. June, 1902. — Alfred Cunningham, Editor of the *Hongkong Daily Press*, helps me to draft our Proclamation and Appeal to the Foreign Powers.

## The Rottenest Government in Existence

4th July, 1902. — I receive a letter from Dr. G.E. Morrison, dated Peking, 25th June, 1902, asking for "news." He writes:

The Government of this country is the rottenest in existence with the possible exceptions of Persia and Turkey.

11th August, 1902. — I receive a letter from D. Warres Smith of the *Hongkong Daily Press*, dated London, 7th July, 1902, assuring me of his support. He writes:

But of course a reformation, and that a very complete one in the system of Government is absolutely necessary. That may be brought about by a big revolution, but I question it much; I fancy it will be a thing of slow growth. Anyhow; a beginning must be made some day and the sooner the better.

13th August, 1902. — I write to Dr. Yung Wing, LL D., instructing him to organize a junta in the United States, and work for the cooperation and support of American friends and sympathisers.

9th October, 1902. — I write to Dr. G.E. Morrison warning him to be in readiness for the coming Revolution. I also write to D. Warres Smith in London.

16th October, 1902. — I discuss with my father the progress of Hung Chuen-Fook's organization work.

19th October, 1902. — I warn Thos. H. Reid, Editor of the *China Mail*, to be prepared for the coming Revolution, and also Alfred Cunningham, Editor of the *Hongkong Daily Press*.

2nd November, 1902. — I advocate the suppression of slavery in China. See English and Chinese newspapers.

6th November, 1902. — I receive a letter from Dr. Yung Wing LL.D, dated No.12, Myrtle Street Hartford, Conn., 21st September 1902. He writes:

"I hold myself ready, at this end, to do all I can to meet your wants at the other end. Send on the cipher or secret code as soon as possible. It is an indispensable adjunct to our correspondence."

13th December, 1902 — Dr. Sun Yat Sen arrives in Hongkong by the s.s. "Indus" and proceeds to Saigon.

24th December, 1902. — Alfred Cunningham, Editor of the *Hongkong Daily Press*, secretly prints our Proclamation of Independence, and in order to preserve secrecy, it is written and lithographed on stone!

25th December, 1902. — My brother Tse Tsi-shau (Tse Tsan-ip) (謝子修 纘葉) arrives from Singapore by the s.s. "Korea," and I appoint him my Deputy.

### Meetings with Dr. G.E. Morrison

26th December, 1902. — Dr. G.E. Morrison arrives in Hongkong from Haiphong by s.s. "Hoihao." We hold a secret consultation at the Hongkong Hotel, and meet again on the 28th, two days later. I hand him copies of our Proclamation of Independence.

23 27th December, 1902. — Hung Chuen-Fook and my brother Tse Tsi-shau leave for Canton on a special mission.

29th December, 1902. — Dr. G.E. Morrison leaves for Australia by s.s. "Chingtu." Before parting he assured me of his staunch support, and promised to return to China immediately on receipt of my telegram.

30th December, 1902. — I receive a letter from my brother Tse Tsi-shau dated Canton, 29th December 1902, reporting the results of a secret conference of eight of the important leaders of the movement at Fong Chuen.

1st January, 1903. — Hung Chuen-Fook and my brother Tse Tsi-shau return from their mission to Canton.

9th January, 1903. — Alfred Cunningham calls to see me and reports that General Gascoigne and the Commodore are in favour of supporting our movement for Independence.

13th January, 1903. — Hung Chuen-Fook calls to see me, and reports that he will make the attempt to capture Canton City on the night of the 28th January, 1903 (Chinese New Year's Eve).

20th January, 1903.—I discuss the situation with my father and brother Tse Tsi-shau.

## The Betrayal

25th January, 1903. — Hung Chuen-Fook and my brother Tse Tsi-shau leave for Canton via Macao to direct the operations for the capture of Canton. Not long after their departure, the Headquarters of Hung Chuen-Fook at No. 20, D'Aguilar Street, were raided by the Hongkong Police, and a number of arrests made.

26th January, 1903. — I despatch a message to Rev. A. Kollecker of the Berlin Mission at Fong Chuen requesting him to warn all friends and sympathisers in Canton and Fong Chuen. I discuss the situation with Alfred Cunningham and Thomas H. Reid, and we watch developments. I send a special messenger to Macao to search for and warn Hung Chuen-Fook and my brother Tse Tsi-shau of the betrayal of our movement.

27th January, 1903. — My father falls ill through anxiety and worry due to the betrayal and the failure of the attempt to capture Canton City. Perhaps it is well that the attempt failed, and God, in Whom I have always trusted, knows best.

27th January, 1903. — My brother Tse Tsi-shau returns from Macao. Arms, uniforms, etc., at Canton and Fong Chuen seized by the Canton authorities and numerous arrests made. Hung Chuen-Fook shaves off his beard and escapes in disguise. J. Scott Harston of Messrs. Ewens and Harston (Solicitors) is retained to watch the case of the arrested and imprisoned reformers.

31st January, 1903. — The *Hongkong Daily Press*, publishes a leading article counselling protection for all reformers and their sympathisers. Alfred Cunningham and J. Scott Harston working in their behalf, all the prisoners are liberated, which causes a great sensation.

## The S.C.M. Post, Ltd.

6th February, 1903. — I discuss with Alfred Cunningham the promotion of The South China Morning Post Limited, for the furtherance of the cause of Reform and Independence.

7th February, 1903. — The China Mail publishes a lengthy leader in support of the “Reform” movement.

24 14th February, 1903. — I discuss the situation with my father, and in order to prevent useless blood-shed, we decide to disband the different forces in the interior.

17th February, 1903. — My father expresses fears that he will not have long to live and blames Hung Chuen-Fook for not listening to his advice. Hung Chuen-Fook was lacking in discretion, and my father suspected him of selfish designs.

### Death of Tse Yet-chong.

11th March, 1903. — Death of my father Tse Yet-chong in Hongkong at the age of 72.

16th March, 1903. — I meet Dr. G.E. Morrison at the Hongkong Hotel, and we discuss the political situation in China. He assured me of his unswerving support.

1st April, 1903. — The *South China Morning Post*, Limited, is successfully promoted and I am appointed to be *Compradore* of the Company.

Owing to the failure of the attempt to capture Canton City and the death of my father, I decide to allow Dr. Sun Yat Sen and his followers a free hand, and to devote my time to the furtherance of the cause of Reform and Independence through the columns of the *South China Morning Post*, and other newspapers.

The *South China Morning Post* is now recognized to be the leading newspaper of South China.

28th April, 1903. — My letter “Russia and Manchuria” signed “Indignation” is published by the *Hongkong Daily Press*.

7th August, 1903. — The *China Mail* and *Hongkong Daily Press* publish at my request strong leading articles in support of the “Supao” prisoners, who were arrested in Shanghai.

22nd July, 1904. — I published the first Chinese Diary of the Russo-Japanese War, and received appreciations from high Japanese officials.

22nd. August, 1904. — I advocated the formation of an International Society for the protection of Ancient Historical Relics, and the universal suppression of vandalism. See world's newspapers and Hongkong newspapers of 22nd August, 1904.

### **The World's Chinese Students' Federation**

1st October, 1904. — I advocated the formation of the World's Chinese Students' Federation. See letters to my old friend Dr. Wu Lien-teh, M.A., M.D., LL.D., (伍連德博士)

Dr. Wu Lien-teh is the world-famed Plague Expert of China, and the founder of the Peking Central Hospital and Medical College. He is one of the brightest gems in China's medical history.

28th December, 1905. — I advocated a scheme for the termination of the United States boycott movement in China. See *South China Morning Post* of 28th December, 1905.

26th April, 1907. — Dr. Sun Yat Sen, Wong Hing (黃興) and others raise the flag of revolt at Wong Kong and Yam Lim in S.W. Kwang-tung.

18th July, 1907. — I receive a letter from Dr. Yung Wing, dated South Windsor, Conn., 7/6/1907, assuring me of his continued staunch support.

24th September, 1907. — In order to frustrate Russian designs, I urged the immediate colonization of Manchuria and the development of its mineral resources. See *Sheung Po* of 24th September, 1907.

25

### **Dr. Yung Wing's Scheme**

22nd October, 1907. — I receive a letter from Dr. Yung Wing, dated 771 Asylum Avenue, Hartford, Conn., 17/9/1907, submitting his scheme for a successful revolution in China.

25th January, 1908. — I meet Dr. G.E. Morrison at the Hongkong Hotel, and we discuss the political situation in China. (See lengthy interview in my

Diary.)

12th May, 1908. — Dr. Sun Yat Sen, Wong Hing, Wu Han-man (胡漢民), Wong Chin-wei (汪精衛) and others raise the flag of revolt at Ho Hau, on the borders of Yunnan province.

17th August, 1908. — I receive a letter from Dr. Yung Wing, dated No. 310, Sargeant Street, Hartford, Conn., 14/7/1908, advocating the union of the reform parties, and condemning Kang Yu-wei and his Po Wang Whui Party.

30th June, 1909. — Claimed that the Chinese were the first to discover Northern Australia during the Ming Dynasty, and advocated an investigation by the Chinese Government. See *China Mail* of 30th. June, 1909.

17th May, 1910. — I receive a letter from Dr. Yung Wing, dated 16, Atwood Street, Hartford, Conn., 13/4/1910, strongly denouncing Kang Yu-wei and his disciple, and informing me of his meeting with Dr. Sun Yat Sen.

24th October, 1910. — I advocated a closer understanding between the United States and China, and discussed the future control of the Pacific. See *South China Morning Post* of 24th. October, 1910.

22nd February, 1911. — My Open Letter "Russia and China" is sent to the Governments of the Foreign Powers, the Foreign Ministers at Peking and all the Foreign newspapers, in order to pave the way for the Great Revolution in China.

8th April, 1911. — Tartar General Fu Chi (孚琦), of Canton, assassinated.

27th April, 1911. — Attack on Viceregal Yamen and attempted capture of Canton by Wong Hing and others. Seventy two revolutionaries lose their lives in this attack.

### **Sir Hiram S. Maxim**

14th June, 1911. — I receive a long letter from Sir Hiram S. Maxim, dated London, 13/5/1911.

He offers China a new rifle, and refers to the importance of flying machines.

He discusses flying machines *vis-a-vis* dirigibles.

Sir Hiram always supported the Chinese in speech and writing. He greatly sympathised with the Chinese in their struggle for Freedom and Independence,



and went so far as to offer his valuable services to the Republican Government of China.

In a letter to me, dated 14th. April, 1913, he wrote:

I could do a great deal for China if the Chinese would give me the opportunity. — I am regarded as the greatest expert on fire-arms in the world. — I took the personal Grand Prix for artillery at the last Paris Exposition. — Notwithstanding that I am an old man I am still very active and able to do a lot of work. — I have long been in strong sympathy with the Chinese, and I would like to finish up my career by making myself very useful to them.

I strongly recommended Sir Hiram to President Yuan Shih-kai direct, and also through my friend Dr. G.E. Morrison, but Yuan Shih-kai failed to take advantage of Sir Hiram's offer. It was to Sir Hiram that I sent my plans of a dirigible airship in 1899. The problem of aerial navigation by dirigible airships, propelled by motor-driven fan propellers fore, aft and deck, was solved by me in 1894. The three deck propellers embodied the gyroscopic principle of ascending and descending. Sir Hiram believed in flying machines and had no faith in dirigibles. The design of my dirigible air-ship was published in many of the world's illustrated newspapers and magazines of this period. 26

25th August, 1911. — I expose "Lin Shao-yang," the author (European) of "A Chinese Appeal to Christendom," in the *Hongkong Daily Press*. He apologises in the columns of the *North China Daily News*.

## The Revolution

### The Wuchang Revolt and Li Yuan-hung 1864–1928

10th October, 1911. — The foreign drilled troops of Hupeh province mutiny, and cooperating with the revolutionaries succeed in capturing Wuchang.

The Revolution spreads quickly throughout the whole Empire, from Chihli in the north to Kwangtung in the south and from Shantung in the east to Sze-

chuan in the west. So swift and overwhelming was the progress of the Revolution that consternation reigned in Peking, and in despair the Manchu Court turned to Yuan Shih-kai (袁世凱) for assistance in quelling the rising and saving the dynasty.

In fifteen days all the lower Yangtze provinces were lost to the Empire, and by mid-November fourteen provinces had declared their independence.

Li Yuan-hung (黎元洪) is elected by the Revolutionary Committee to be President of the Provisional Government at Wuchang.

25th October, 1911. — Tartar General Fung Shan (鳳山) is killed by a bomb at Canton.

3rd November, 1911. — I reply to Sir Hiram S. Maxim's letter of 29th September 1911, thanking him for his support and offer of a new rifle.

4th November, 1911. — Shanghai captured by the revolutionaries.

9th November, 1911. — Independence of Canton declared.

21st December, 1911. — Dr. Sun Yat Sen arrives in Hongkong by the s.s. "Devanha." We meet on board and exchange greetings. Dr. Sun Yat Sen leaves for Nanking.

### **Dr. Sun Yat-sen's Elected Provisional President**

29th December, 1911. — Dr. Sun Yat Sen is elected Provisional President of the Republic of China by the Military Assembly at Nanking.

15th January, 1912. — I interview my Editor friends Thomas Petrie of the *South China Morning Post* and B. A. Hale of the *Hongkong Daily Press* and urge them to advocate the early recognition of the Republic of China by Great Britain. I also write to Dr. Yung Wing LL.D., Dr. G.E. Morrison, *London Times* Correspondent, D. Warres Smith and Sir Hiram S. Maxim.

### **Dr. Yung Wing's Advice**

23rd January, 1912. — I receive a letter from Dr. Yung Wing, LL.D., dated, 284, Seargeant Street, Hartford, Conn., 22nd December, 1911. He writes as

follows:

284, Sargeant Street,  
Hartford, Conn.  
22nd December, 1911.

My dear Tse Tsan-tai, — As you are one of the leaders of the Revolution, I have enclosed one of my type-written letters for formality's sake more than for anything else.

27

What I am anxious now is that the predatory Powers now in Peking, will have a preponderating influence with the Yuan Shih-kai, Tang Shao-yi crowd, that they will leave no stone unturned to influence the Convention in Shanghai to adopt a constitutional monarchy and have Yuan Shih-kai and Tang Shao-yi have the control of the new Government. This would be just as bad as to have the Manchu regime back again in power.

A new China should be in the hands of pure Chinese, and not in the hands of trimmers and traitors with European predators to intermeddle in our civil and domestic affairs; if foreigners are employed, Americans are far preferable. We can have them under contract, on the basis of retention or dismissal, as we think best. Such an important question should be calmly discussed and firmly decided upon in National Convention, by delegates to meet in a central city.

A Provisional Government at once be organized, and established so as to start the wheels of government at work, and to restore order and peace of society in their normal condition. Let me hear from you.

Christmas greetings and happy New Year congratulations to you. —  
Yours faithfully,

Yung Wing  
(Enclosure.)

Hartford, Connecticut,  
December 19th, 1911.

Gentlemen. — You have been providently called upon to head this wonderful Revolution which, within a short time, has reduced the Manchu regime to a cringing suppliant.

On the one hand, you have in behalf of 450,000,000 of the people of China, who have suffered oppression and depression for nearly three centuries, cried for a Republic, to give them freedom and independence for relief. Now that you have got these Manchus under your heels, let no political trimmers, however able and plausible their representations may be, entice you from your original and steadfast purpose of calling for a Republic. They may tell you that constitutional monarchy is more in consonance with your national antecedence, more in harmony with your national tradition and associations; that a constitutional monarchy with a Privy Council, headed by such a man as Yuan Shih-kai as Premier, would guarantee you all the political safeguards promised.

28 Don't believe a word of this. Put no trust whatever in what Yuan Shih-kai may say to you through Tang Shao-yi, his mouthpiece. You may be sure they are all on the make. Who is Yuan Shih-kai? Did he not play the traitor to his master, the Emperor Kwang Hsu, in 1898? Ought a traitor to be trusted? He is the man so much admired by the foreign diplomats in Peking, who took advantage of the crumbling Manchu Dynasty exacting by all manner of ingenious feignings till he got hold of the premiership of the miserable opium sot, Prince Ching: then his lame leg all at once got well, he was able to move about trying to prop up the odious Manchu machine, to take in China once more, having him as the chauffeur, to manipulate.

Is such a man of deep designs to be trusted? He ought to be banished with the banished Manchus. His name "Yuan" ought to be expunged

from the national record of family names. He ought to be branded as a traitor in history, and forever held in execration by posterity.

The people of China in the plenitude of its sovereignty have called for a Republic and you, their leaders, have seconded the call. The people's voice is the voice of God (*Vox Populi, Vox Dei*). Therefore follow that voice and you will be all right.

But there is yet another still, small voice, humming in my mind, which demands peremptory enunciation. It is this: After you have finished your glorious work of the disposal of the political power of the Manchus in China, it is absolutely necessary that you should cling to each other closer than brothers.

Under no circumstances and under no provocations whatever should you fall out with each other, plunge into intestine feuds and Civil War.

I need not picture to you the dire consequences of anarchy and chaos. You know what they are yourselves. An internecine war is sure to bring on foreign intervention, which means partition of this magnificent country which a wise Providence has kept in reserve for the Chinese race, to build up a model Republic.

Think of the glorious work your revolution has opened up for you and posterity.

May He who rules all things keep you in His fear and law, and finally gather you all in the fold of Christ Who is the sum and substance of all things. — Faithfully Yours,

Yung Wing.

30th January, 1912. — I telegraphed to President Sun Yat Sen to prevent the sale of ancient curios and pictures (historical treasures) of the Peking and

Fengtien palaces. This was done in order to preserve China's historical treasures and prevent the Manchus from raising war-funds.

2nd February, 1912. — Dr. Yung Wing, LL.D., sends his congratulations to Dr. Sun Yat Sen, and writes as follows:

284, Sargeant Street,  
Hartford Conn.,  
29th December, 1911.

My dear Tse Tsan-tai. — Your letter of November 21st received, also the first, and perhaps the last number of the (journal), which ends, and the Dynasty will abdicate with it, as you find no more to send me. You will have to wait till the new President of the New China Republic, Mr. Sun Yat Sen, is inaugurated: you can then send me a report of his inauguration and a complete list of his Cabinet. Should you see him in Nanking in the inauguration, by all means tender him my hearty congratulations.

Tell him I am improving and perhaps will make my way to China, and have a sight of the New Republic.

I hope I may be spared to live to see the day when my friend may be elected the next President, who has laboured for China and the Chinese for the space of 22 years.

I wish very much to have a personal acquaintance with all the other leaders of the Revolution before I die.

29 Their memories ought to be embalmed in the memory of the people.

My son Morrison and Ada have not arrived from Europe. I do not expect to see them till February. The last I heard from them was Egypt. They are having a fine time among the mummies in Upper Egypt.

By this time they must be in Rome.—Yours sincerely,

Yung Wing.

Merry Christmas and Happy New Year to you and to the Mother of Mrs. Morrison and her sisters in Hongkong. Hope they are all well. — Y. W.

## Abdication of the Manchus

### China Becomes a Republic

7th. February, 1912. — Abdication of the Manchu Emperor Hsuan Tung, which was hastened by the "machinations" of Yuan Shih-kai.

12th February, 1912. — China becomes a Republic. End of the Manchu Dynasty.

On this day three abdication edicts were issued. The first runs in part as follows:

Today the people of the whole Empire have their minds bent upon a Republic, the Southern provinces having initiated the movement and the Northern generals having favoured it subsequently. The will of Providence is clear and the people's wishes are plain. How could I for the sake of the glory and honour of one family thwart the desire of teeming millions? Wherefore I (the Empress Dowager) with the Emperor decide that the form of government in China shall be a Constitutional Republic to comfort the longing of all within the Empire and to act in harmony with the ancient sages, who regarded the throne as a public heritage.

The following appeared in the *London Times*, February 16, 1912:

The 'Son of Heaven' has abdicated, the Manchu dynasty reigns no longer, and the oldest Monarchy of the world has been formally constituted a Republic. History has witnessed few such surprising revolutions and none perhaps of equal magnitude, which has been

carried out in all its stages with so little bloodshed. Whether the last of these stages has been reached is one of the secrets of the future. Some of those who know China best cannot but doubt whether a form of government so utterly alien to Oriental conceptions and to Oriental traditions as a Republic can be suddenly substituted for a Monarchy in a nation of four hundred millions of men, whom kings with semi-divine attributes have ruled since the first dim twilights of history. China or, at all events, articulate China, has willed to have it so. She has embarked with a light heart upon this great adventure and we heartily desire that it may bring her the progressive and stable government she craves.

15th February, 1912. — Dr. Sun Yat Sen resigns the Presidency. The resignation of Dr. Sun Yat Sen, was followed by a meeting of the National Assembly at Nanking, which elected Yuan Shih-kai to be First President of the Republic. 30 Everything was pre-arranged! In fact, Dr. Sun Yat Sen was “engineered” out of the Presidency by Yuan Shih-kai and his satellites.

#### **D. Warres Smith Remarkable letter**

15th March, 1912. — I receive a remarkable letter from D. Warres Smith, dated London 23rd February, 1912, in which he deals with the political situation in China, and gives his opinion of Yuan Shih-kai and others. He writes as follows:

“Hongkong *Daily Press*” Office, 131,  
Fleet Street, London, E.C.,  
23rd February, 1912.

Dear Mr. Tse Tsan-tai. — I thank you very much for your kind letter of the 16th ult. I received it sometime since but was induced to delay an acknowledgment as every day brought us fresh telegrams and I was anxious to see how things were developing. The latest is



that Dr. Sun is to come as Minister to London. I am sure that the present Minister here, H. E. Lew, is heart and soul with the new Government. I have not seen him since he came back here to his present high post, as I do not seek to intrude myself into such aristocratic circles. (But you will have no aristocracy now you have a Republic!), but I saw him in 1900 just after I came home, when he was Secretary of Legation, and although I did not recognise him he did me at once, as I used to spend my summer "week-ends" in Macao, where he had and probably still has a house on the Praya Grande and where his family lived. He was very kind, and rendered me considerable help. No doubt Dr. Sun would make an able and discreet Minister, but may not be of a lively enough disposition and I should think would not care much for the gaieties of London society, an almost necessary qualification. Dr. Wu Ting-fang (whom by the way I knew in the very old days, when known by his Cantonese name of Ng Choy, as he was at one time lessee of the Chung Ngoi Sun Po) is more suitable in that respect, but I suppose he will be required in China as I should think Dr. Sun would be also.

The former would be the more likely to ingratiate himself with the people of the North, as he has been so much in Peking, and they, judging from what I saw and heard of Tientsin men during my ten years in Shanghai, are an independent and self-assertive people.

I presume you will to a considerable extent follow the old policy of having the head officials men belonging to other provinces than those in which they hold office, yet on the other hand avoid the danger of a disproportionate number of Kwang Tung men. A great trouble will be, as in other countries, monarchical as well as republican, the hordes of office seekers.

What has become of Kang Yu-wei? I suppose you Southerners do not like him, or rather his policy, much, but better have him as a friend than as an enemy.

It is difficult for Chinese and impossible for foreigners to know the real merits of the different men and how they are likely to behave under entirely new conditions, but I should have more faith in Kang than in Yuan, as I do not forget that it was the latter who betrayed Kang's party to the old Empress; and although his purpose is no doubt good he seems to us, who can get only very imperfect and coloured information, somewhat of a shuffler and time server. But I must not speak disrespectfully of the President of the greatest Republic in the World. Personally, while I rejoice that the Manchu usurpers are done with for ever, I think it would better have ensured stability had a strong man been found as a Constitutional Monarch. But you do not want to be bothered with any opinions. I only express them because they are those generally held by "old China hands" here. I fully believe that what all of you desired was not so much a Republic as relief from the Manchu corruption.

A statement came from Berlin yesterday that the German Government will recognise the Republic as soon as the National Assembly has confirmed the Constitution and definitely elected a President; but I do not think it is likely until all the chief Powers have agreed, and I think haste is to be deprecated. It would make no practical difference. At the same time I should like Great Britain to be the first, as she was in the case of Japan.

I do not write for the papers here and have no influence of any kind, nor if I had would it be of any use.

An effort is no doubt being made to keep Peking as the Capital, but I hope it will not succeed, as both historically and geographically Nanking is much more suitable. But I fear there will be trouble in the North, if not elsewhere, for years to come. Consolidate but do not rush things, let *festina lente* be your motto.

3 Wishing the cause and you personally every success. — I am, yours

sincerely,

D. WARRES SMITH.

### **Death of Dr. Yung Wing, LL.D.**

20th April, 1912. — Death of Dr. Yung Wing, LL.D., at his home in Cambridge, Massachusetts, United States of America. Dr. Yung Wing was a true patriot and dearly loved his fatherland, and he longed to come back and serve China in his old age. It may be said of Dr. Yung Wing that he was born too soon and before his time.

24th April, 1912. — Dr. Sun Yat Sen arrives in Hongkong from Nanking and is welcomed by the representatives of about sixty public Societies and Associations. I am elected spokesman, and introduce the Committee of Representatives to Dr. Sun Yat Sen.

18th June, 1912. — I send a letter to Dr. G.E. Morrison urging the early recognition of the Republic.

### **Dr. Timothy Richard on China**

18th June, 1912. — I received a letter from Dr. Timothy Richard, dated Shanghai, 13th June, 1912, dealing with the political situation in China. He writes as follows:

Christian Literature Society for China,  
143, North Szechuan Road. Shanghai,  
June 13th, 1912.

To Tse Tsan-tai, Esq., Hongkong.

My dear friend, — Yours of the 24th came duly to hand, for which I thank you. I rejoice with you in the removal from power of those

who have obstructed the progress of China for the last hundred years. But as I conceive it, the destructive is only half the work. By far the most difficult task is the constructive, on lines that are in harmony with the will of God and the best thought of the leading men of the world.

Instead of joyful cooperation on the part of Young China on these lines, I am greatly distressed to find so many ill-informed thrusting themselves forward, while incompetent to lead or to win the confidence of their fellow country-men by noble examples of highest service. Still we must not be discouraged, for in the long run God will be sure to make right overcome might.

I am sorry that your health is not good, otherwise a man like you would be of incalculable service at the present time.

In view of the new conditions in China at present I have thought that a service of biographies of the most eminent Christian statesmen might be of service to the open minds among China's leaders, and the series is passing through the press at present.

Herewith I take the liberty of sending you a brief outline of what I have endeavoured to do in order to place China abreast of any nation on the face of the Earth.

Trusting your health will soon be restored again and that you will be able to put your shoulder to the wheel once more, till China is in a fair way of being second to none in any department of life. Then we may soon expect to see the Kingdom of God being established on all the Earth, and instead of the present unrest all the world over we should have peace and prosperity from the rising to the setting sun. — Ever with kindest regards, I remain, Yours most sincerely,

TIMOTHY RICHARD.

Rev. Dr. Timothy Richard has done much good work for China and the Chinese. The present generation cannot realize the true value of his work, but future generations will know how to appreciate his noble and unselfish Christian services. Jacob Lao (劉雅覺) of St. Joseph's Seminary, Macao the composition of a Chinese National Anthem, which was played on a piano and by a band at Mr. Francisco Tse Yets (謝詩屏) house on the 17th September, 1912. I sent the wording and music of this National Anthem to President Yuan Shih-kai for consideration and approval on the 19th September, 1912.

### **The National Flag of the Republic.**

15th July, 1912. — In order to preserve and perpetuate the original flag of the Revolution (a white sun on a blue ground), I send my design of the national Republican flag to President Yuan Shih-kai for consideration and approval. My design consists of a twelve-rayed or rayless white sun on a blue ground superimposed upon the five-barred flag and occupying the top corner near the bar. The flag of the Army consists of a twelve-rayed or rayless white sun on a blue ground, superimposed upon a red field and occupying the top corner near the bar. The flag of the Navy consists of a twelve-rayed or rayless white sun on a blue ground, superimposed upon a white field, and occupying the top corner near the bar.

25th July, 1912. — Dr. G.E. Morrison is appointed political adviser to President Yuan Shih-kai.

3rd October, 1912. — I received a long letter from Mrs. Archibald Little, 33 dated 69, Grosvenor Street West, London, September 8th, 1912.

The following is an extract. — "I must not tire you with a long letter as I hope to see you before very long. Whenever I get opportunity I write and speak for China's real good. I have spoken at many meetings in the last few years."

### **Thos. H. Reid On The Political Situation**

29th. October, 1912. I received the following letter from my old friend and colleague Thomas H. Reid:

88, Cannon Street, London, E.C.,  
October 9th., 1912.

My Dear Tse Tsan-tai. — I was delighted to hear from you again. After such a long interval since we met, it is indeed gratifying to find that one is not forgotten by old friends. I (trust you are well and that the world is using you well.

It is interesting to read the printed record (Biography by Chesney Duncan) you sent me. It recalls our mutual early struggles to bring about reform in China, and I personally am proud to think that I was the first to support the movement publicly in the *China Mail* when other English newspapers in China and the far East scoffed at the movement and the men who have been instrumental in bringing it to a successful issue. I use the word "successful" because, though there is yet much to be done before China can be said to be on the highroad to complete reform, the first great step forward has been taken in the unseating of the Manchus.

Since I left Hongkong in 1904, I have had opportunities of preaching the cause of reform and of China. In 1905 I had an article in the *Contemporary Review* showing that Germany was a greater danger to the peace of the Far East than China or Japan. During my editorship of the *Straits Times* (1906–8) — when I had the pleasure of renewing association with Sun Yat Sen — I again took up the gospel of the reform of China, and when the revolution occurred in the end of last year, I wrote several articles for the *Daily Chronicle* (London) and elsewhere supporting the Reform Party.

I still have faith in the future of China so long as the motive force behind the reform movement is Sun Yat Sen and men like yourself; and I hope to see you take a more active share in public work there within the next few years.

It is a good thing to see the party in power introducing foreign

advisers to aid in the initial work. Dr. Morrison, my old friend, should be of infinite help to China at the present time.

The Chinese are a very capable people. They were always better than their rulers; and I do not despair — as some do — of China's ultimate success as a Republic. But as the people under the old regime never had a chance of learning the rudiments of self-government, it is only natural that they have a lot to learn.

During their tutelage under foreign advisers they will learn quickly, and some of us may live to see the day when the Chinese will have earned the respect of the whole civilized world as a capable self-governing people, possessed of all the qualities which make for individual prosperity and national greatness.

One of the Malacca canes you gave me when I left Hongkong is my constant companion and is lying beside me in my office here. It constantly reminds me of my old friend in Hongkong to whom I send my kindest greetings and best wishes. — Yours very sincerely,

34

THOS. H. REID

## **Yuan Shih-kai Elected President**

6th October, 1913. — A Provisional Constitution is adopted, and Yuan Shih-kai (袁世凱) is elected President of the Republic.

After Yuan Shih-kai's election, his first move was to order the expulsion from Parliament of all the members who had been identified, directly or indirectly, with the Revolution, and this resulted in the suspension of Parliament.

Matters remained in this condition throughout 1914, Yuan Shih-kai playing the part of a dictator.

In obedience to the "secret" wishes of Yuan Shih-kai, a movement (Chou An Hui) was started in 1915 to make him Emperor. However, Yuan Shih-kai

miscalculated his strength, and when he announced his intention of becoming Emperor, his most intimate colleagues opposed his project and the Ministers of the foreign Powers unanimously counselled him to abandon it.

But Yuan Shih-kai seemed unable to understand the magnitude of the hostility he had aroused, and continued to make lavish preparations for his enthronement.

Opposition was strongest in Yunnan, which declared its independence under General Tsai Ao (蔡萼).

In a mandate issued on March 21st, 1916, Yuan Shih-kai announced that the Republican form of government would be maintained, and that "*the official acceptance of the throne is hereby cancelled.*" But the mischief had already been done, and it was too late!

### Death of Yuan Shih-kai

Yuan Shih-kai never recovered his lost prestige, and his death on 6th June, 1916, shortly followed from chagrin and disappointment. The Chinese consider Yuan Shih-kai to be a traitor and the man chiefly responsible for the civil war in China.

On the 29th September, 1915, I received the following letter from Dr. G.E. Morrison, Political Adviser of President Yuan Shih-kai:

Peking, China,  
20th. September, 1915.

Dear Mr. Tse. — I was much interested to receive your letter of the 24th August and to learn that you had written a new work on the "Creation and the Deluge," and that you are going to publish it after this terrible war (European War) is ended. But why wait till then? A book of such absorbing interest ought to be published without any delay. In fact, on receiving your letter, I thought at once of



telegraphing to you and asking you to delay no further: every hour is of importance.

I would suggest with regard to the title that you ought to lay emphasis on the fact that the work is by a Chinese philosopher. This, I think, is most important, and I would suggest that it would be a friendly act if you were to dedicate your book to the Allied Rulers, sending each one of them a copy. Their acknowledgments would give material assistance in making the book more widely known.

I have been waiting, with much expectation, for your pronouncement upon the activities of the Chou An Huei, who, I understand, are putting forward three proposals:

35

1. That the President shall become Emperor.
2. That the President shall become Hereditary President.
3. That the President shall be Hereditary Preident vis-a-vis foreign countries and Monarch in the eyes of his people.

Believe me,

Very sincerely yours,  
G.E. Morrison.

Regarding the activities of the "Chou An Huei," I replied to Dr. Morrison's letter on the 11th October 1915, as follows:

I have nothing to say regarding the situation in China, and as I have told you already, I have washed my hands of politics. What I dread is a Civil War in China. The Civil War is coming, and you know who is responsible for it.

The blood of the people will be on this man's (Yuan Shih-kai) head.

My dear friend, I have already warned you of what is coming, and I should not like to see such words as “the rat and the sinking ship” applied to you—my wise and learned friend!

The following telegram appeared in the *Tsun Wan Yat Po* (*Chinese Circulating Herald*) of Hongkong on 18th February 1916:

Dr. Morrison, after investigating the conditions in the provinces, suggests a postponement of the ascending of the Throne.

### **Death of Dr. G.E. Morrison**

Dr. G.E. Morrison resigned his appointment as Political Adviser in the Spring of 1918, and left Peking for England in order to undergo an operation. He was operated upon in June 1919, and again in January 1920. He did not recover and died at Sidmuth on 31st May, 1920.

The *Times*, in paying a tribute to him said:

Even his last months were devoted to working the best he could from the sick-room in the interests of China.

I am proud of the late Dr. G.E. Morrison sincere friendship, and know that he was a true friend of China and the Chinese. He was acknowledged and recognised to be the greatest living authority on China, and in his sad and untimely death, China has lost one of her greatest and best of friends.

### **Conclusion**

Well knowing that the assumption of the Presidency by Yuan Shih-kai would lead to civil war and bloodshed, and not wishing to participate in fratricidal party strife, I retired from the political arena, and occupied my time in the study of ancient Chinese art, and in historical, scientific and geological investigations connected with the “Origin of Man,” the “Cradle of the Human Race,” and the “Truth of the Deluge.”

The results of my investigations and research work have already been published in two books and over 20 pamphlets and special articles by Messrs. Kelly and Walsh, Limited, of Hongkong.

My discoveries and findings are contrary to established beliefs and theories, and I confidently await the verdict of the scientific and thinking world.

In concluding this brief history, I beg to announce that the complete history, when written, will consist of about six or more large volumes, and will contain photographs of the leaders of the Revolution and their foreign friends and sympathisers, besides reproductions of important historical documents and letters, and much highly interesting correspondence and descriptive notes and interviews, between the years 1892 to 1912.

The dramatic period of Civil War between the years 1912 to 1924 will be material for a separate history.

Since I belong to no party and have no political enemies, I shall gladly welcome contributions towards this history from all friends and colleagues, irrespective of nationality or party, as I am conscious of the fact that many important historical details must have escaped my memory or remain hidden from my knowledge.

## Notes

1. Original publication: Tse, *The Chinese Republic*. The author changed the title to *The Chinese Republic. A Short History of the Revolution. Also the Secret History of the Revolution*. A printed note is attached to the pamphlet: "Note. This history first appeared in serial form in the columns of the 'South China Morning Post' of November, 1924, *five months before the death of Dr Sun Yat Sen in Peking (12/3/1925)*" (italics: handwritten amendment).

2. Author erased the word "fellow" and substituted "man."

3. Author erased “ — no obstructions — ‘all paper.’ ” after the word “anything”.
4. Author added: “Pro Bolshevik Russia and policy of World Revolution”; we have removed the word “ ‘revolution’ ” for consistency.
5. Author added: “Canton Saikwan Massacre of 1924”; we have added “in the wake of the” for consistency
6. The author added in the Margin: “(國愛心盡).”

## Chapter 4

# Ancient Chinese Art. A Treatise on Chinese Painting

---

a. Published as: Tsan Tai Tse, *Ancient Chinese Art. A Treatise on Chinese Painting* (Hong Kong: South China Morning Post, Ltd., 1928), 18 pp.





Painting of Ta Tung Palace by Li Ssu Hsün of the Tang dynasty.  
(A.D. 745)

Silk. Size—Length 9 feet 9½ inches. Width 6 feet 5½ inches.

From the original in the Private Collection of Tse Tsan Tai, Esquire.

藏泰續氏謝平開

本絹圖殿同大繪訓思李軍將大唐

Figure 4.1: Painting of Ta Tung Palace by Li Ssu Hsün of the Tang (A.D. 745).  
Source: Tsan Tai Tse, *Ancient Chinese Art. A Treatise on Chinese Painting*  
(Hong Kong: South China Morning Post, Ltd., 1928), 18 pp.

**Historical Note** In A.D. 745, Li Ssu Hsün was ordered by the Emperor Ming Wang (明皇) to paint a screen picture of the Ta Tung Palace (大同殿), which took several months to complete.

Some days after its completion, the Emperor said to him “Your skills is more than mortal; at night I can hear the splash of the water in your picture” (Giles).

In this painting, the Emperor is seen standing in his palace gazing at the thundering waterfall and admiring the grandeur of the surrounding scenery.

— T.T.T.



## Introduction

Owing to the wonders of Wireless Telegraphy, Telephony, Television, and Telephotography, and the great strides which are being made in Aviation, and consequent on the exploding of Mr.<sup>1</sup> Rudyard Kipling's false and misleading dictum "*For East is East and West is West and ne'er the twain shall meet,*" which has resulted in so much ill-feeling and misunderstanding in the past, the peoples of the different countries of the World are being brought into closer contact with each other, necessitating the fostering of good-will and friendship and the acquiring of a better knowledge and understanding of each other.

Not only should nations have a friendly understanding of each other as individuals, but it is important and necessary that they should get thoroughly acquainted with each other's civilization, In order to hasten the realization of universal peace and brotherhood, which is the World's desire, and the goal of all pacifists and the representatives of the Hague Peace Tribunal. Is is purely with this object in view, that I have made the attempt to place before the Western world a brief outline of the history of the Art of Ancient China, because Art is Civilization and Civilization is Art.

And, my best thanks and acknowledgments are due to the well known art critics from Whose writings I have made extracts and quotations.

TSE TSAN TAI

谢纘泰

## Origin

Art is Civilization and Civilization is Art.

7

The standard and greatness of a Country's Civilization is measured by its Art, which unerringly unfolds to the World the thought and life of its people, its religious inclinations, and the stages of its material progress and advancement.

It is only savages and the barbarous races of the World, who have no knowl-

edge of Art, and are ignorant of its importance and civilizing influences.

China's Art is indigenous.

China has had her designers and artists from time immemorial. We read in the earliest records of China's history (史記) that Fuhü (伏羲 — about B.C. 3300) designed and drew the Eight Trigrams (八卦) and a map of the Hwang Ho River (河圖), and that he also ordered Tsang Chieh (倉頡) to design a pictographic script. Therefore, it is evident that simple line-drawing originated and came into existence at the same time.

The earliest mention of Colour dates from the Emperor Shun (舜) (B.C. 2000). It is recorded in the Shu King (書經) or Book of History that His Majesty ordered the twelve symbols of power to be embroidered in the five colours on his 8 sacrificial robes, and painting is also mentioned.

## Development

The early painters were more draughtsmen and designers than artists in the modern sense. Their craft was the designing and drawing of palaces and buildings and frescos for the decoration of the walls. It was all line work, and colours (natural mineral oxides) were added to make the human figures, &c. more realistic and conspicuous.

We have examples of this line-drawing in the sculptured walls of the Lung Men Caves, the sculptured Han (漢) bas-reliefs (B.C. 100), and the magnificent fresco paintings which adorn the walls of the Tei Temple (岱廟) of the sacred Tai Shan (泰山) mountain in province, and which have not been retouched for over one thousand years. We have also the fresco paintings which have been discovered by Sir Aurel Stein, Dr. Sven Hedin and other modern explorers in the sand and *Loess* buried cities of the deserts of Chinese Turkestan and Mongolia, which I have proved in my books (1914) and pamphlets (Published by Messrs. Kelly and Walsh, Ltd.) to be the "Garden of Eden" and the Cradle of the Human Race, (See pamphlets proving the Upheaval of Central Asia and subsidence of the Pacific continent, the flooding of the World by a devastating Tidal Wave,

and a change of 15° in the Antediluvian North Polar regions, resulting in the retreat of the Frigid cold from North Europe, and the sudden freezing of Alaska and Northern Asia.)

The next Evolutionary Stage in Chinese Art was the transfer of these designs and drawings to cloth and silk, when it was possible to manipulate the brush and play with the colours with greater freedom.

It was then that the true artist began to delight his Imperial master the Emperor and the people with proofs of his genius, and to permanently record the customs and the civilization of his times.

It is during the Han (漢) Dynasty (B.C. 200 to A.D. 200) that we read of artists who painted portraits, dragons, birds, beasts, horses and pavilions, &c.

In B.C. 51 it is recorded that the Emperor Yuan Ti (元帝) ordered the portraits of eleven of his most eminent warriors and statesmen to be hung in the Unicorn Pavilion of the Palace.

Portraits and paintings by Lieh I (烈裔) (B.C. 220) and others of earlier dates are also mentioned.

According to these records, the art of painting in China had its origin early in the Classical Period, which opened five centuries before the birth of Jesus Christ.

The Golden Age of Chinese Pictorial Art dates from the 4th Century, and reached its zenith during the Sung (宋) dynasty (969–1279 A.D.).

One of the earliest Chinese paintings known to the European Art World is 9 the silk scroll painting "The admonition of the female historian" by Ku Kai Chih (顧愷之) (A.D. 400) in the British Museum. Regarding this artist's work Mr. Laurence Binyon of the British Museum, one of the greatest of living Chinese Art critics, ably and truthfully writes,—

Though of so early a period, there is nothing primitive about the workmanship; on the contrary, the painter has perfect mastery over his materials, and his delight in it overflows in the exquisite modulations of the brush with which the draperies are expressed.

For beauty of sweeping and yet sensitive line, few paintings in the

World approach this. Yet charming touches of actual life prevent the art from being over-calligraphic. Note the sense of dignity, of refinement — still more apparent in other scenes of the roll — pointing to an age of culture. Chinese art must have been flourishing for many centuries before work so mature could be produced.

As writers on the subject have assumed that no work of this period remains, and have conjectured that only rude beginnings existed before the introduction of Buddhism and Indian art, this painting of Ku Kai Chih is of extreme importance to students as well as of high aesthetic value.

I would use the same language in describing the works of Chan Tzu Chien (展子虔) of the Sui (隋) dynasty (A.D. 581–617), of which I have four in my Collection. They are a set of four large allegorical paintings in monochrome (Ink) entitled and representing *Fishing* (漁), *Afforestation* (樵), *Agriculture* (耕), *Education* (讀), painted on silk, which, fortunately, are well preserved for their great age (nearly 1500 years). They are from the Imperial “Sung” collection, and are of the greatest artistic and historical value and importance. Chan Tzu Chien’s figures are full of life and vigour, and possess a subtle charm beyond that which mere technique can give. He is considered to be one of the progenitors of Tang (唐) painting, when not the actual founder; and undoubtedly the great Wu Tao Tzu (吳道子) was guided by his historical example, as I find that there is much similarity between the brush work of the two artists.

## Technique

Chinese Art, and particularly Ancient Chinese Art, is not yet properly understood and appreciated by European Art-lovers. Chinese Art is “calligraphic,” and the colouring is harmonious, and finished in delicate and soft gradations of colour. There is also a rhythmic unity and harmonious arrangement of details, which is instinctive.

10 An ancient masterpiece, and particularly a landscape painting, is a wonderful

composition of vigorous and sinuous strokes and lines, and systematic groups of dots, representing bushes and clumps of shrubbery, or patches of moss and lichen, when applied to rocks and stones.

A real masterpiece contains nothing superfluous, not even a line, stroke, or dot. All should have their fixed and proper positions in the composition of the landscape.

All the landscape masterpieces are soft and subdued, and free from anything coarse and “fiery” (火) or distracting to the eyes of the critical observer.

Lines may be thick or wiry, and dots big or small and of various recognized shapes, but all have their designated positions in the picture, and are executed with the utmost care and precision.

Event dots must have form and life!

No line, stroke or dot is executed haphazardly by the Master.

Dots may be compared to the gems in a piece of embroidered tapestry. They help intensify lights and shades, and to regulate distances in the landscape, and only the Master knows how and where to place them

So careful and precise is the master in the placing and execution of his lines and dots, that he does not want to give posterity the chance to detect flaws, in the shape of *weak lines* or *superfluous dots*, in his picture. Therefore, the expert eye can easily detect a genuine masterpiece at a glance. But in order to be able to properly judge and appreciate the brush work of a landscape masterpiece, it is necessary to possess a practical knowledge of Chinese painting and technique.

The ancient masters excelled in the life and vigour of their lines and dots.

They first composed their picture, and with the composition in their minds' eye, they started rapidly but cautiously to transfer the scene to silk or paper.

In the execution of all the prominent lines and strokes of human figures, and the mountains, rocks and trees, &c. of a landscape, the brush was generally held perpendicularly and firmly between the thumb and the first, second and third fingers of the right hand, with the arm extended for freedom and rapidity of movement, and, then, after taking in a deep breath and concentrating the whole “mind's force” (spiritual impulse) and sending it through the rigid arm

to the very point of the tightly held brush so to speak, the stroke would be begun, and the breath would not be released, until the complete stroke, whether perpendicular, curved, or modulated, had been finished! Concentration was only relaxed, when the Master occupied himself in the casual and easy task of shading and colouring his picture.

- 11 It is only by holding the brush in this way that it is possible to concentrate and sustain the strength and “force” necessary for executing the long sinuous and virile lines of a masterpiece, and it is the ability to execute such graceful sweeping lines with perfection that calls forth the admiration and delight of the Chinese calligraphist and Art connoisseur.

This “force” is a hidden concentrated movement guided by will power, solely Chinese in inception, and quite unfamiliar to foreign artists and art critics.

Such skill with the brush can only be attained by years of constant study and practice, and depends upon the genius and intelligence of the student.

It is this skill with the brush that is responsible for the impression that Chinese Art is *calligraphic*, but it should be remembered that it is applicable mainly to the free-hand calligraphic brush work of the Black and White landscape paintings and figure sketches of the Idealistic Sung Period (A.D. 960–1279).

The Tang (A.D. 618–906) painters were more practical and realistic in their marvellous compositions, and devoted most of their time and attention to colouring and details, as exemplified by their magnificent paintings of Religious and Historical subjects, Human figures, and Architectural views and landscapes.

Painters are born not made, and without inspiration and imagination one cannot expect to become a great Chinese painter; and besides it is necessary to possess the power of modulating the lines and strokes of the brush in order to give them “life” and make them express the nature, and the intensity and force of the “spirit.”

Chinese painting is based on memory and founded on the great examples of the past.

Chinese painters never copy or imitate a model in the Western sense, but their art is based on reproduction and imaginative reconstruction, and perfection

consists of rhythmic conception and a thorough mastery of brush strokes and dots.

Chinese Art has never been influenced by the mathematical perspective and scientific laws of European painting.

It has its own perspective, which is *isometric*, and which Chinese artists consider best suited to bring out the essential and permanent points in a painting.

Symmetry and harmony in design and composition was of great importance, and the design, the drawing, and the colouring of a painting must be in perfect unison.

To appreciate Chinese painting properly and at its true worth, the westerner must forget his own mental preconceptions of Art, and adopt a point of view totally differing from that in which he has been educated. 12

In order to understand and appreciate the artistic and scenic beauties of a Chinese landscape painting, the spectator must imagine himself as viewing the scene from an eminence or flying over the landscape in an aeroplane.

It is only by this ingenious and clever method of perspective (Isometric) that the Chinese painter has been able to include hundreds of miles of scenery within the limited space of a few square feet of silk or paper.

Chinese methods of landscape painting are quite unique, and the art of landscape painting in all its phases, remains unsurpassed in its richness of poetic depth and feeling.

Chinese Art is governed by the following Six Canons of Hsieh Ho (謝赫), the famous painter and art critic of the Southern Chi (南齊) (A.D. 479–501), who is regarded as the first systematic writer on Art.

1. 氣運生動 Rhythmic conception and vitality of execution.
2. 骨法用筆 Structural strength and virility of brush work.
3. 應物寫形 Conformity of outline with shape of object.
4. 隨類傳彩 Harmonious colouring suited to various forms.
5. 經營位置 Perspective to be correctly perceived.

6. 傳模移寫 Representation to conform with style.

Such are the essential laws of Chinese pictorial art, which no other age or nation has ever possessed.

These six canons of the fifth century only crystallized ideals, which inspired previous artists; and their universal acceptance proves them to have been racial and native to the Chinese mind.

The theory advanced by certain Foreign art critics that Chinese painting owed its virtual existence to the inspiration of Buddhist images and pictures imported from India is entirely untenable.

Such a theory is absurd and needs rectifying.

Modern Chinese artists have lamentably failed to follow in the footsteps of the ancient masters, and this is why the lines and brush work of their pictures are so weak, and wanting in life and vigour. Indeed, the life and vigour of the marvellous brush work of the masterpieces of the Old Masters is now a lost art.

## Schools

- 13 The ancients were great lovers of Nature, and the mountains, the waterfalls and the streams; and they obtained their inspiration from the mountains, where they sat and drank in the scenes and natural wonders, which lay spread out before them.

They were great thinkers and scholars, and they communed with God in the solitude of the majestic grandeur of their mountains and crags, and this is why the great and incomparable Sung (宋) Landscape masterpieces so faithfully represented the towering peaks and precious crags of the Yang-tze Valley provinces.

During the Tang (唐) (A.D. 618–960) there developed two great schools of Landscape painting, the Northern School being represented by Li Ssu Hsün (李思訓) and his son Li Chao Tao (李昭道), and the Southern School by Wang Wei (王維), the aesthetic poet and painter, and the originator of the chaste and idealistic in Black and White landscape painting.



The chief characteristic of the Northern School was gorgeous and brilliant colouring and a certain virile sternness, and that of the Southern School, idealistic refinement and a total absence of vivid colours.

At this period, and previous to the introduction of Buddhism into China there existed two main currents of thought, viz. Confucian and Taoist.

The former was exemplified in the Art of the bronze ceremonial vessels, the jade symbols of rank, &c., the frescos and paintings produced in early times (Chow (周) and Han (漢) dynasties), and in the sculptured stone slabs made during the period from B.C. 200 to A.D. 200. These works of art all bore witness to the Chinese love of the Confucian virtues of social harmony, piety and loyalty. But, we have still to unearth and bring to light the Art treasures and relics of the Antediluvian cities, which have been smothered and entombed by the 400,000 square miles of Diluvial Loess deposits of the Whang Ho River basin of North China (See my books and pamphlets).

The other current was of a different sort, and showed the idealistic and individualistic trend in the Chinese consciousness. This current flowed mainly in the South, where it flourished wild and free on the banks of the Yang-tze River, and found expression in the literary and artistic works of a group of poets and artists of the period (A.D. 618 to A.D. 1279).

About B.C. 200 rumours of Buddhism came to China over the trade route which was opened through Chinese Turkestan, but it was not until A.D. 67 that Buddhism was officially introduced into China by the Emperor Ming Ti (明帝). And this may also be considered as the period of Graeco-Bactrian influence.

With the fall of the Han dynasty, Buddhism gradually began to prosper in China. Monasteries and temples sprang up rapidly, and with them arose the need and demand for Buddhist art, which then began to influence Chinese painting. 14

Besides the Northern and Southern schools founded by Li Ssu Hsün and Wang Wei, other schools of Landscape painting were founded subsequently by Fan Kuan (范寬), Yen Wen Kuei (燕文貴), Mi Fei (米芾), Ma Yuan (馬遠), and Hsia Kuei (夏珪) of the Sung (宋) dynasty (A.D. 960–1279), whose art and technique will be exhaustively dealt with in a future article.

## Masters

For the purpose of this treatise, I am dealing principally with the Art of the Tang (唐) (A.D. 618–906), the Golden period of Chinese Art, as exemplified by the masterpieces, which are in my collection, So far, it has been possible to see examples of the Landscape Art of the Tang (唐) and Sung (宋) periods (A.D. 618—1279), but genuine Tang (唐) masterpieces are extremely rare.

Any Landscape painting ante-dating this period has not yet been found.

Tang Landscape art as represented by Li Ssu Hsün (李思訓), a grandson of the founder of the Tang Dynasty, and his son Li Chao Tao (李昭道), was grand and majestic, and bold in conception (See Frontispiece). Both father and son executed towering peaks, amidst which were located magnificent palaces and terraced pavilions, glittering in green and red and gold, from which could be observed the thundering water-falls and the meandering silvery clouds of mountains and scenery of the sublimest grandeur.

This Frontispiece Illustration (see Figure 4.1 on page 203) is a photograph of the wonderful screen painting of Ta Tung Palace painted by Li Ssu Hsün for Emperor Ming Wang (明皇) in A.D. 745, now in my collection, and has been miraculously preserved. It took several months to complete, and is signed by Li Ssu Hsün. (Dimensions — Length 9 feet 9½ inches. Width 6 feet 5½ inches). It is the greatest Landscape painting in existence, and one of the priceless artistic wonders of the World.

So perfectly executed and architecturally correct is the line work and tracery of the palaces, pavilions and bridges, and so carefully and minutely are the leaves of the different groups of trees formed and coloured, that the brush work could only be properly studied and appreciated by using a magnifying glass!

One is amazed at the stupendousness of the task, and the archaic splendour of the painting; and it is not surprising that it should have taken several months to complete.

- 15 Li Ssu Hsün's line and brush work strong and virile, but delicate and refined, when compared with the rapid, free, and vigorous brush work of the Sung (宋) masters.

Li Ssu Hsün was a Heaven-born genius, and the Master draughtsman and colourist of China: and his art fittingly represents the Ancient glory and greatness of China's civilization.

His paintings have a chrysochlorous shine about them, and when hung in the light, they give out a wonderful and mysterious green and orange (golden) glow.

This was his speciality, and was much imitated by later masters. It was on this on this account that he was looked upon as having furnished the pattern for landscape work as far as colours are concerned, and his originality in the colouring of his pictures has caused later art historians to describe him as the founder of the Northern School of Landscape Painting.

Therefore, it is not surprising that Li Ssu Hsün has been acclaimed by generations of Chinese artists to be the greatest Landscape painter of China,

In my opinion Li Ssu Hsün is the greatest Landscape painter that the World has ever known.

Li Ssu Hsün was born in the 4th year of Emperor Kai Yuan's (开元) reign (A.D. 715), and died when sixty six years of age.

He was appointed Field Marshal (大將軍), for which reason his pictures are spoken of as "Marshal Li's Landscapes" (唐大李將軍山水).

Wang Wei (王維) the famous scholar and poet of the same period, was equally famous as a calligraphist and painter, and he originated a new school of Landscape painting, which Art historians have termed the Southern School. He shunned the brilliant colours used by Li Ssu Hsün and his son, and is therefore popularly acclaimed as the originator of the Southern School of Black and White Landscape painting. Wang Wei appears to have perfected his art by direct inspiration from Nature. He generally painted his Landscape in monochrome, and excelled in snow scenes, faithfully representing clumps of snow covered trees with villages nestling amidst the snow-clad hills of the landscape, as shown by the masterpiece (From the Imperial Kuen Lung (乾隆) Collection) in my copllection, bearing inscriptions by the Emperor Kuen Lung and other famous art critics, viz., Su Shih (蘇軾) and Yen Siu (嚴與) of the Sung dynasty. (Size: Length 5 feet 6

inches. Width 2 feet 5 inches).

His art is simple and unpretentious, and shows the carefully executed lines and brush work of the enthusiastic lover of all that is Nature. His pictures are devoid of glaring colours, and are shaded and tinted in accordance with the moods of Nature. There is nothing coarse about them, but a gentle softness pervades his peaceful and smiling Landscapes.

- 16 Wang Wei's style is distinctly different from that of Li Ssu Hsün, the magnitude, depth and grandeur of whose compositions have never been equalled or even approached by any of the great masters of succeeding dynasties.

Li Ssu Hsün and Wang Wei are the originators of two schools of Landscape painting, but in the magnificence and majesty of design and composition, the scheme of colouring, the boldness and depth of imagination, the marvellous brush work, and the flawless execution of lines, strokes and dots, Wang Wei has never been able to approach Li Ssu Hsün.

Indeed, Li Ssu Hsün is beyond compare, and his name must live through the ages as the greatest Landscape painter of China.

Chinese Art critics and historians declare that Li Ssu Hsün masterpieces are protected by the Gods and Spirits of the Spirit World, for they say—

how has it been possible for frail humanity alone to protect and preserve them from loss and destruction throughout the changing vicissitudes of so many centuries?

Amongst painters of the human figure of the Tang dynasty Wu Tao Tzu (吳道子), whose real name is Wu Tao Yuan (吳道玄) again altered to Wu Tao Yuan (吳道元), is universally acknowledged to be the Master of Masters, ancient and modern; and he is regarded as the inspired painter of all generations, not only in China, but also in Japan, where he is known as Go-doshi. He was born towards the close of the Sixth Century at Yang-ti near Kai-feng-fu in Honan.

Chinese Art historians also refer to him as the greatest painter who ever handled a brush.

Wu Tao Tzu's brush work is bold and vigorous and full of life, and he combined extreme decision with extreme quickness. He painted as he wrote,

so unerringly correct was his brush work. He knew how to paint the human expression in all its moods, and he faithfully portrayed with life-like exactitude the benign features of his Gods and Goddesses, and all human forms, which originated from his brush.

Chinese artists say that it is most difficult to paint the hands and feet of the human figure, but the hands and feet of Wu Tao Tzu's figures were always perfect and matchless in form and execution. Such was the wonderful brushwork of Wu Tao Tzu, and it is no wonder that his name has been surrounded with legend, and that he should be universally acclaimed *Master of Masters*, and the greatest painter of all generations.

Wu Tao Tzu's painting of the portrait of Kuan Yin (觀世音大士像), the Goddess of Mercy, with dishevelled hair and naked feet, sitting beside a flowing stream under a big clump of spreading bamboos, and with an open scroll across her lap, in my collection. is a remarkable picture, and exhibits this great Master's technique and vigorous brush work in all its phases, the brush work of the rocks and bamboos being particularly interesting and instructive.

It is painted on silk in monochrome (Ink) with the features of the Goddess slightly tinted, and is dark and scarred with age. (Size: Length 7 feet 4 inches. Width 3 feet 4½ inches). 17

The knowing glance of the Goddess is wonderfully lifelike, and she appears to smile and read you through!

It is a glance that haunts and is never forgotten, like that of Leonardo Da Vinci world-famed "Mona Lisa."

The painting bears Wu Tao Tzu signature and Seal "Tao Yuan" (道玄, which are absent from the majority of paintings reputed to be from his brush. It is dated the 10th year of the reign of the Emperor Kai Yuan (開元), i.e. A.D. 722.

Wu Tao Tzu styles himself in this painting "Disciple of Buddha, Wu Tao Yuan" (弟子吳道玄) in the "ancient" script.

In accordance with Official etiquette, the character 玄 in his name was afterwards ordered to be changed to 元, owing to the character 玄 in the Emperor's name 玄宗 (Yuan Tsung) being the same.

The painting also bears lengthy panegyrics by the two famous Art critics, Tseng Hsuan (曾選) and Chien Si (錢迺) of the Yuan (元) dynasty.

## Foreign Criticism

The following are some interesting and valuable opinions of European Art critic Mr. Laurence Binyon of the British Museum, one of the ablest and greatest of Chinese Art critics, writes,—

Whatever the limitations of Chinese painting, no one could deny its real qualities as pure art.

It was a world as yet not half explored, in which they continuously wondered at the freshness of the thoughts and feeling out of which it flowed, and at the suggestions and inspiration which it held for us to-day.

Mr. Ralph M. Chait has given the following interesting opinion in the "*Antiquarian*,"—

We look back on a period of more than 4,000 years with a feeling of wonder at the achievement of the Chinese in the arts of peace, and the light gradually dawns upon us when we begin to slowly realize the sources upon which the Chinese artist could draw. There is not in all of China a mountain, a plain, river, grove or wood that is not hallowed by some legend or poetic tale, and besides, intimately connected with the idea of immortality.

And so, in brief, the artists of China, though careless, or rather caring less for material reward, but with hearts on fire with zeal for their craft, imparted to their work a "spirituality," a certain something difficult to define.

## Conclusion

In order to enable the World to properly appreciate Chinese Art, I hope it will be possible in the not far distant future to see the great paintings of Europe represented by the side of the great paintings of India, Persia, Japan and China. 18

To quote Sir Charles J. Holmes, Director of the National Art Gallery.—

Only by exhibiting the great painters of the East in juxtaposition with the great painters of Europe could we properly estimate, proclaim and emphasize the place of the East in the vital artistic achievement of the World.

And, in conclusion, I also hope that I have succeeded in explaining and elucidating the intricacies of Chinese Art and technique, and that this short treatise will prove useful as a guide and companion to Western Art students and lovers of all that is beautiful and instructive in Chinese Art, and pave the way for abler works on the subject.

## Appendix

### Mr. Tse Tsan Tai's Collection

From  
Present Day Impressions of the Far East  
and  
Prominent and Progressive Chinese at Home and Abroad.  
Published by The Globe Encyclopaedia Company,  
London, England,  
1917.

Mr. Tse Tsan Tai's hobby is Ancient Chinese Art.

His collection of priceless masterpieces is famous and it is reputed to be the finest in the World. Some of the pictures are nearly two thousand years old.

His pictures have been critically examined and greatly admired by Prince Waldemar, Prince Reuss, Dr. E.A. Voretzsch (Collector and Connoisseur, and German Minister to Lisbon (Portugal) and Japan), H.E. Oscar Stuebel, J. Nelson Fraser (Indian Education Service), H.E. Sir Charles Eliot (Vice Chancellor of Hong Kong University and British Minister to Japan), T.K. Dealy (Director of Education, Hong Kong), F. Perzusi (Expert of the Berlin Museum), and others.

## Notes

1. See instructions on page 243 to change "Sir Rudyard Kipling" into "Mr. Rudyard Kipling."



## Chapter 5

### Short Articles from the Media

This chapter includes the miscellaneous articles found in the package, mainly as loose off prints provided by the newspaper to the author. One such article,<sup>a</sup> already published in Tse, *The Creation., the Real Situation of Eden, and the Origin of the Chinese*, pp. 37–38, see page 45, has been omitted in this section.

The pamphlets 13–49, which Tse mentions in his authorization of Mitchell (see p. 241), are missing in the package as received, but the articles included in this chapter do carry handwritten numbering which may indicate that they are the remains of these pamphlets. “Oldest Beetle in the World” was marked No. 22, “The Mystery of ‘The Deluge’ ” No. 37, and “A Prehistoric City” No. 41.

---

a. Tse, “The War as a Punishment.”

## **Oldest Beetle in the World. Fallacy of 15,000,000 Years Exploded**

.<sup>a</sup>

I have read with great interest the article headed “Oldest Beetle in the World” appearing in your valuable paper September 26 announcing the discovery of a fossil beetle by Mr. H.C. Tan of the Chinese Geological Survey whilst examining the rocks and soils of the coast of Shantung province. Mr. Tan found this fossil spread on a shale slab, after he had removed a top layer of clay, and according to Professor A.W. Grabau and his Colleagues of the Chinese Geological Survey it is believed that “about fifteen million (15,000,000) years ago it was a beetle, just like the beetles with which we are familiar to-day”! Such an amazing belief needs to be swallowed with some salt! I cannot believe that this fossil beetle is 15,000,000 years old, and will prove that such a belief is erroneous and misleading.

### **Like Islands in Shantung**

Shantung province is within the loess area of the Hoangho River basin, and the accumulation of loess has been so extensive that the deposits have reached the mountain tops, which now appear as rocky islands dotting the vast expanse of surrounding loess. These fantastic islands of black igneous rock are above 12 in number and lie scattered to the north of Tsinanfu, and rise abruptly from the sea of dust and sand (diluvial loess), which forms the plain. They are at present a mystery and a riddle to geologists and scientists of the “Evolutionary School” of thought. Some geologists have taken them for “necks” filling the vents of extinct volcanoes, all other traces of which have been long since eroded away! But this theory cannot be right, as these hills consist of igneous rock on a par with granite, and are not remnants of scattered volcanoes. The grain of the rock is not volcanic, and the other features of a volcanic “neck” are equally absent.

---

a. Originally published as Tsan Tai Tse, “Oldest Beetle in the World. Fallacy of 15,000,000 Years Exploded,” *North China Daily News*, October 14, 1924,

The rocks from hills six miles apart show the same features, and more than that, the rocks all show the same history.

They are in fact the projecting peaks of a mountain system smothered and buried under the loess deposits carried down into the Hoangho River basin from the Mongolian and Tibetan highlands by the flood waters of the Diluvian Tidal Wave. And, these rocky "islands" of the Shantung plain must always remain a mystery to our geologists and scientists of the "Evolutionary School," because of their refusal to believe in the great upheaval of Central Asia and the subsidence of a large mass of Continental land in the Pacific Ocean followed by a tidal wave which flooded the whole World.

As the result of my investigations and research work, I find that the loess of the Hoangho River basin is water-born and a Diluvial deposit. In arriving at this conclusion, I have been greatly helped by my "deputies," famous geologists and explorers of the past, who have collected most valuable information for my use and guidance.

### **Toying with Millions.**

The belief that the loess of Mongolia and the Hoangho River basin is over 10,000,000 years old is one of the greatest mistakes of science. And, truly it is surprising how some of our scientists toy with millions of years, particularly those "Evolutionists" of Darwin's School of thought. Professor H. Fairfield Osborn, Mr. Roy Chapman Andrews and other members of the Fourth American Asiatic Expedition at present labouring in the wilds of Mongolia stoutly adhere to the theory that loess is a wind-blown deposit and over 10,000,000 years old! This theory is misleading our young Chinese geologists of the Chinese Geological Survey, and I am afraid these learned American scientists have made the greatest mistake of their lives. And it is this mistake that is misleading them and causing them to advance those strange and bewildering theories and findings connected with their recent discovery of fossil remains in Mongolia.

Since the wind-blown theory of the origin of loess deposits has led these scientists to believe that loess must be over 10,000,000 years old, it stands to

reason that all fossil remains discovered embedded in this loess must also be of the same fabulous age! It is just here that they have been grievously misleading the scientific and thinking world.

Consequently, it is of the greatest scientific importance to settle once for all the question of the origin and age of the loess deposits of China and similar extensive deposits in other parts of the World.

### **The Great Tidal Wave**

Once this question is definitely settled, there will be no difficulty in the many geological and scientific riddles which are perplexing and bewildering our geologists and scientists. A careful study of the land surface of China proper, particularly the basins of the Hoangho and Yangtze Rivers, the highlands of Mongolia, Tibet and the geological construction of the coast line and island groups extending from the Yellow Sea in the north to the Gulf of Tongking in the south all prove subsidences and upheavals due to some great seismic disturbance.

According to my investigations, I find that this great seismic disturbance happened about the time of the Deluge (B.C. 2348), and that it caused the sinking of a great mass of Continental land in the Pacific Ocean and the great upheaval of Central Asia, resulting in a devastating tidal wave which swept around the world and destroyed all prehistoric (antediluvian) civilizations. The results of this great seismic disturbance have been fully dealt with in my books and supplementary pamphlets and special articles, over 20 in number, published by Messrs. Kelly and Walsh, Ltd., Hongkong.

This great tidal wave flooded the Asiatic continent and washed all the surface soil of the Mongolian and Tibetan highlands into the Hoangho River basin by way of the big funnel-shaped Kansu trench (depression), and hence the smothering of the mountains of Shantung by the vast deposits of loess (mud), which cover an area of 400,000 square miles of North China. How could such a vast and extensive deposit of dust, in some parts over 1,000 feet thick, have been blown and deposited there, and where did all this dust come from, and by what scientific theory is it possible to account for its accumulation, and to prove the

attraction of such vast quantities of dust to this particular locality?

If I have succeeded in convincing young readers that loess is a waterborn deposit and not wind-blown, then it is reasonable to believe that loess and its fossils cannot be over 10,000,000 years old; and, therefore, the fossil Chinese beetle found by Mr. H.C. Tan cannot be over 15,000,000 years old.

### **The Birthplace of Man**

I am also greatly pleased to read that Peter Kozloff, Russian Explorer, has announced the discovery of enormous numbers of skeletons of animals hitherto unknown, leading him to believe that Mongolia may have been the birthplace of man and the origin of a considerable part of the animal and reptile world, as this discovery and other discoveries of "pockets" of mixed bones recently made by French priests and English and Chinese geologists and scientists in Kansu province all help to confirm my 1914 discovery that Chinese Turkestan,—the locality between the (Tien Shan and Kuen Lun),—is the Cradle of the Human Race ("Garden of Eden" of Genesis), and that the whole of Mongolia, Chinese Turkestan, and Tibet was flooded by the Tidal Wave waters of the Deluge, which smothered the forests and vegetation of this vast territory, and drowned prehistoric (antediluvian) man and all the animals and reptiles, etc. associated with him and his times. The dead bodies of these human beings, animals, reptiles, insects, etc. were all mixed up and swamped together by the whirling flood waters of this tidal wave and deposited in the "depressions" of the upheaved basins of Mongolia and Chinese Turkestan (diluvian inland seas) and became covered with successive deposits of mud (loess), resulting in those wonderful and mysterious "pockets" of mixed bones discovered by Peter Kozloff, the members of the American Asiatic Expedition and others, and all helping definitely to confirm my finding regarding the diluvial (water-born) origin and age of the vast loess deposits of China, and indeed the whole world.

## The Mystery of “The Deluge” — What Recent Discoveries at Ur of the Chaldees Suggest: World Wide or Local Catastrophe?<sup>a</sup>

Most interesting to Scientists and Bibliologists are the recent excavations and the wonderful discoveries of gold and silver jewellery, ornaments and precious stones, gold heads of lions and bulls, etc., pottery etc., made by Mr. C. Leonard Woolley, Director of the British Museum Expedition, in the prehistoric royal tombs of Ur in Mesopotamian, proving the truth and the historical accuracy of the record of the Flood.

### The Excavator of Ur

I have just read through Mr. Wooley’s book “Ur of the Chaldees,” kindly presented to me by my friend Lieutenant Colonel F. H. Kisch, Chief Executive of the Jewish Agency for Palestine, in Jerusalem, Palestine, and have come across important and significant statements and facts, all proving the truth of a *Universal Flood* caused by a Tidal Wave created by the upheaval of Central Asia and the subsidence of a large mass of continental Land in the Pacific Ocean, and which *suddenly* drowned and destroyed all contemporary Prehistoric races and civilisations of the different continents of the World, as fully explained in my books and thirty six supplementary pamphlets and special articles.

### Upheaval in Central Asia

Mr. Woolley believes that the Flood was local and not universal; and I presume this must be due to the fact that he has not been able to devote much of his time and attention to the study of the geological facts, which prove (1) the upheaval of Central Asia, (2) the subsidence of and in the Pacific Ocean, and

---

a. Published as: Tsan Tai Tse, “The Mystery of ‘The Deluge.’ What Recent Discoveries at Ur of the Chaldees Suggest: World Wide or Local Catastrophe?,” *Hongkong Daily Press*, May 2, 1931,

(3) the Diluvial origin of the extensive "Loess" deposits of the World.

In dealing with the clay and sand, &c. deposits, which have smothered and entombed the Prehistoric Chaldean (Sumerian) cities of the Delta-land of Mesopotamia, embracing an area of about 40,000 square miles, Mr. Woolley writes:—

Page 13.— Westwards of the line of railway which joins Basra to the capital of Iraq is desert blank and unredeemed. Out of this waste rise the mounds which were Ur. To the north and west and south of Ziggurat hill (the highest mound), as far as the eye can see, stretches a waste of unprofitable sand.

It seems incredible that such a wilderness should ever have been habitable for man, and yet the weathered hillocks at one's feet cover the temples and houses of a very great city.

The area of this waste 40,000 square miles. Such physical conditions are conclusive proof that the vast deposits of mud and sand are water-laid (Diluvian), and that the destruction of the city was sudden and overwhelming.

Page 17.— At al Ubaid, about four miles from Ur, we have dug out part of a primitive settlement.

In the ruins we found quantities of the fine painted hand-made pottery such as occurs in the lowest levels touched at Ur. There was nothing to show to what race these first inhabitants of Mesopotamia belonged.

Page 19.—Then at a date which we cannot fix, people of a new race made their way into the Valley, coming whence we do not know, and settled down side by side with the old inhabitants, These were the Sumerians.

## **Sumerians From Chinese Turkestan**

I find that these Sumerians arrived in Mesopotamia by way of Persia, coming originally from the locality between the Caspian Sea and Chinese Turkestan, where I believe great prehistoric cities are entombed in the 600,000 square miles of Diluvian "loess" deposits of the area now named Russian Turkestan. And as I said in 1914, the upheaved plateau of Chinese Turkestan is the Cradle of the Human Race.

Page 20.— Many generations passed—and then came the Flood.

Page 21.— It has long been agreed that the story of the Flood as told in Genesis is based on the Sumerian legend of which the oldest written versions that we possess go back more than two thousand years before Christ, but many authorities have doubted whether either story had any basis in historical fact.

That the Sumerians had no such doubt is clear, for, apart from the legend, the annalists in their sober table of the reign of kings made mention of it as an event which interrupted the course of history.

## **The Flood 2,400 B.C.**

The Hebrew story of the Flood as recorded in Genesis of the Bible is believed to be inspired, and should not be confused with the Sumerian story, both being separate and distinct records.

Page 22.— During the season 1927-8 and 1928-9 our work on the prehistoric grave yard had resulted in the excavation of a huge pit some 200 feet across and between 380 and 40 feet deep.

Page 25.— Just below the floor of one of the tombs, in a layer of burnt wood ash, there were found numerous clay tablets inscribed with characters of a much more archaic type than those of the inscriptions in the graves.



The writing of the tablets might be assigned to about 3,700 before Christ, and were two or three hundred years older than the tombs.

According to these tablets the date of the Flood might be about 5,400 B.C.?

## **Wonderful Civilisation**

The Biblical date of the Flood is 2,348 B.C., and it is hoped that further discoveries will result in the verification of this date.

Page 26.— The wonderful civilisation illustrated by the contents of the graves, had always seemed to imply a long past behind it; now we had proof of just such a steady growth as we had assumed,

Instead of the stratified pottery and rubbish we were in perfectly clean clay, uniform throughout, the texture which showed that it had been laid there by water. The clean clay continued without change.

The sole object found in it was a fragment of fossilised bone which must have been brought down with the clay from the upper reaches of the river, until it had attained a thickness of a little over 5 feet.

Then, as suddenly as it had begun, it stopped, and we were once more in layers of rubbish full of stone implements, flint cores from which the implements had been flaked off, and pottery.

Page 27.— The great bed of clay marked, if it did not cause, a break in the continuity of history.

Above it we had the pure Sumerian civilisation slowly developing on its own lines.

Below it there was a mixed culture of which one element was Sumerian and the other of that al Ubaid type which seems to have nothing to do with the Sumerians but to belong to a race which inhabited the river valley before the Sumerians came into it.

## No Ordinary Flood

Page 28.— The bed of waterlaid clay deposited against the sloping face of the mound, Which extended from the town to the stream or canal at the northeast end, could only have the result of a flood.

No other agency could possibly it. Inundations are of normal occurrence in lower but no ordinary rising of the rivers would leave behind it anything approaching the bulk of this clay bank.

Eight feet of sediment imply a very great depth of water, and the flood which deposited it must have been of a magnitude unparalleled in local history. That it Was so is further proved by the fact that the clay bank makes a definite break in the continuity of the local culture. A whole civilisation which existed before it is lacking above it, and seems to have been submerged by the waters.

However, Mr. Woolley has not been able to account for the origin and magnitude of this Flood.

Page 29.— Taking into consideration all the facts, there could be no doubt that the flood of which we had thus found the only possible evidence was the Flood of Sumerian history and legend, the Flood on which is based the story of Noah.

Page 31.— So much for the facts. What, then, is to be built up on them?

This deluge was not universal, but a local disaster confined to the lower valley of the Tigris and Euphrates, affecting an area perhaps 400 miles long and 100 miles across.

In this way we can explain what before was one of the great puzzles of South Mesopotamian archaeology, the sudden and complete disappearance of the painted pottery which at one time seems to have been universally distributed over the southern sites.

The people who made it, the older inhabitants of the country, were wiped out by the Flood.

### **A Tidal Wave.**

All these facts prove conclusively that this flood was not local, that the volume of water which flooded the land was cataclysmic and something extraordinary, and that the physical conditions of the Delta-land could only have been created by mud and debris swept down from the upper reaches of the Tigris and Euphrates Rivers by the continuous flow of the impounded *Tidal Wave* flood waters of the plateaus and highlands of Armenia.

It is impossible for a local flood, no matter how extensive or how heavy the rain-fall, to create such vast deposits of mud and sand, &c., which cover the Delta area about 40,000 square miles), extending from Kish to the head of the Persian Gulf.

As the physical conditions of the Delta-land of Mesopotamia are identical with the Delta areas of the Nile of Egypt and the Whang-Ho river of China, all of which have prehistoric cities swallowed up and embedded in their extensive "Loess" deposits, this is conclusive proof of a *Universal Flood*, and the flooding of the World by a Tidal Wave. And nothing but a devastating Tidal Wave could have suddenly and so completely wiped out and destroyed all Prehistoric races and civilisations of the World, and wrought the great physical changes which have altered the faces of continents.

I have been patiently waiting, since the year 1914, for the results of the excavations Egypt and at Ur of the Chaldees; and I hope Mr. C. Leonard Woolley will eventually be able to write and confirm the truth of my discoveries and findings, thereby reconciling Science and Religion and proving the two periods (1) *Antediluvian* and (2) *Post-diluvian*, of Chaldean history, and likewise Chinese, Persian and Egyptian history and civilisation.

## A Prehistoric City<sup>a</sup>

Sir,—The announcement of the discovery of an ancient city in the Lower Indus Valley of India, dated about B.C. 3,000, by Mr. R. D. Banerji, of the Government of India Archæological Department, greatly interests me, as it helps to prove and substantiate my 1914 finding that the following six extensive sand and loess areas are diluvial, and contain buried Prehistoric (Antediluvian) cities, which were suddenly drowned and destroyed by the devastating flood-waters of the great Tidal Wave of the Flood of Genesis, B.C. 2348 (Genesis VII-II. "The fountains of the great deep were broken up"), created by the upheaval of Central Asia and the subsidence of a large mass of Continental land in the Pacific Ocean:

1. Russian Turkestan Depression, area about 600,000 square miles.
2. Whang-Ho Valley (China), area about 400,000 square miles.
3. Indus River Valley (India), area about 209,000 square miles
4. Euphrates Valley (Mesopotamia), area about 40,006 square miles,
5. Nile Basin (Egypt), area about 300,000 square miles.
6. Mississippi Valley and Great Central Plain (U.S.A.), area about 1,000,000 square miles. (For full particulars see my books and forty supplementary pamphlets).

Our leading scientists still obstinately adhere to the erroneous belief that loess is a wind-blown deposit, taking millions of years to accumulate! But such a theory is false and misleading; and it is absolutely impossible for these vast deposits of sand and loess of three continents to have been created by wind eroded rocks, and to be wind blown.

Consequently, it is only by the exploding of this fallacious and misleading belief that it will be possible to solve the riddles of science and geology, and reconcile Science and Religion.

---

a. Published as: Tsan Tai Tse, "A Prehistoric City," *South China Morning Post*, December 5, 1931,

It was this tidal wave that flooded the different continents of the world, suddenly drowning and entombing in vast deposits of mud and sand, &c., (loess), all contemporary prehistoric cities and civilizations, and creating a break and that "mysterious blank" in the history of the nations, which has been baffling and perplexing our scientists and historians up to the present day.

And this accounts for the wonderful preservation of this ancient city of India and its buildings, etc., and likewise the ancient cities recently unearthed at Ur (Mesopotamia), Gaza (Palestine) and Sakhara (Egypt).

Regarding this ancient city, Sir Edward A. Gait, Chairman of the Royal Society of Arts, says:

The remains of an extensive city were opened out. They include well-built houses with their own wells and bathrooms, brick flooring and covered drains, betokening a pre-Aryan Civilization, dating from about 3,000 B.C. and far in advance of that of the same period in Egypt and Mesopotamia.

Other similar remains, together with some of a still earlier civilization, have since been found.

The remarkable discovery upsets the old idea that civilization was first brought to India by the Aryans.

It is hoped that the future Excavations in these extensive loess areas will throw further light on the truth of a Universal Deluge.

TSE TSAN TAI

P.S.—Regarding the origin of the 1,000,000 square miles of glacial and diluvial deposits of the Great Central Plain of the United States of America, and the great upheaval and subsidence of Continental land, which made the Earth plunge and take a list of about 15 degrees, and which caused the Antediluvian North Polar regions to retire from the Centre of Greenland (about Latitude 75

degrees and Longitude 40 degrees), and advance towards the North of Asia, suddenly freezing Alaska and Siberia, which were then Semi-tropical, resulting in two “glacial” and “interglacial” movements and their consequent “changes” in North America and Europe, and leading to the erroneous theory of the “Four Ice Ages,” see my Special Article “What made the Soil of the United States fertile” (Three Parts), published in the *South China Morning Post* of 17th, 20th and 24th November, 1923.

T. T. T.

## **Jesus or Buddha? Historical Survey. Doubt as to Origin. China and Christianity<sup>a</sup>**

The introduction of Buddhism into China from India by Buddhist missionaries took place in A.D. 65, about the same time that St. Paul was preaching and moving westward from Antioch to Rome (A.D. 48 to A.D. 83).

Buddhism as founded by Buddha (meaning the “awakened”), has existed for about 2,400 years.

In India, the land of its birth, it has now little hold except among the Nepaulese, and some other northern tribes; but, it bears full sway in Ceylon, Indo-China, Tibet (where it assumes the form of Lamaism), Mongolia, Central Asia, China and Japan.

Oriental scholars now generally concur in fixing the date of its origin sometime in the 5th Century B.C., and making it spring up in the North of India.

According to the Buddhist books, the founder of the religion was an Indian prince of the name of Siddhartha, son of Suddhodana, King of Kapilavastu, which is placed somewhere on the confines of Oudh and Nepaul. He is often

---

a. Published as: Tsan Tai Tse, “Jesus or Buddha? Historical Survey. Doubt as to Origin. China and Christianity,” *Hongkong Daily Press*, October 13, 1936,

called Sakya or Sakya-muni and also Gautama.

Legendary history states that Prince Siddhartha was married to a lovely and charming princess by his father the King, who virtually kept him a prisoner in the palace.

After twelve years of blissful married life, and when thirty years old, he fled from the Palace to live a life of austerity, and begin the life of a religious mendicant.

During the forty years that Buddha continued to preach his strange doctrine, he appears to have traversed a great part of Northern India, and everywhere making numerous converts.

He died—at Kusinagra in Oudh at the age of eighty, and his body being burned, the relics were distributed among a number of contending claimants.

According to Chinese historians, it is recorded that in A.D. 62, the Emperor Ming Ti of the Han dynasty had a strange vision. He dreamt one night that a “divine being” clothed in golden raiment and with a blaze of white light crowning his head, had appeared to him.

On awakening he enquired of his courtiers who this “divine being” might be, and a certain Buddhist courtier, who heard the story remarked as follows:

In the West there exists a divinity, whom the people call the “Buddha.” The image is of great stature, and its face is golden. Perhaps ‘Buddha’ may be the ‘divine being,’ who appeared to your Majesty.

This observation led the Emperor to despatch a Special mission to India; and after a few years absence the mission returned to Loyang with a big image of Buddha borne on the backs of White horses, together with forty two Pali books containing the Buddhist “sutras.” Two Hindu missionaries accompanied the mission back to China.

On arrival, they were welcomed by the Emperor and given residence in the “Hung Loo” monastery, where they at once began the study of the Chinese language and the translation of the “Sutras.”

From henceforth numerous monasteries came into existence, and Buddhism

began to prosper and flourish under the patronage and protection of the Emperor and his Government (A.D. 67).

Consequently, Chinese Buddhists have always looked on India as their “Holy Land”; and, beginning with the 4th century, a stream of Buddhist pilgrims continued to flow from China to India during six centuries.

However, since St. Paul was preaching Christianity in Europe (A.D. 48 to A.D. 83), when the Emperor Ming Ti had his strange dream (A.D. 62), I am constrained to ask might not the “divine being,” who appeared to him “clothed in golden raiment and with a blaze of white light crowning his head,” have been Jesus Christ of Nazareth?

It is noteworthy that no mention is made by the Emperor Ming Ti of a “Golden Image” or an image with a “Golden Face,” as described by the Buddhist courtier, the apparition being quite strange to the Emperor.

Moreover, Buddhism as a religion had already been favoured by the Emperor Wu Ti (B.C. 100), whose armies penetrated to Indo-Scythia and beyond, and if it had been “Buddha,” the Emperor Ming Ti would certainly not have questioned his courtiers for an explanation.

## **Hope of the World**

But, Christianity as a religion was practically unknown to the Chinese at this period and the Buddhist courtier who interpreted the Emperor Ming Ti's dream, doubtless took advantage of the opportunity to influence the Emperor and further the cause of Buddhism in China, and hence the successful introduction of Buddhism in China, Christianity then being without a champion.

Owing to the rumours of war and the prevailing perplexity and distress among the nations of the World it is hoped that the churches of China and the World will unite, and that all Christians will join in a Great World Religious Revival for reconciliation, and the peace and happiness of the world.

And, since the great “Chung Wah” Republic has heralded the birth of the “New Han” era in China, I hope the 400,000,000 of China will welcome and follow Jesus Christ, the Saviour of Mankind, and carry on the work that has been put



back 1.875 years by the mis-interpretation of Emperor Ming Ti's dream.

God's ways are inscrutable, and the time is now ripe and opportune for united action.

“Go ye and teach all nations.”

—Matthew 28-19.

## Racial Knowledge. Two Distinguished Contributors<sup>a</sup>

It will be interesting to our readers to learn that Sir Grafton Elliot Smith, Kt., M.A., LL.D., D.Sc, Ch. M., F.R.C.P., F.R.S., the famous anthropologist, who was Professor of Anatomy in the University of London (University College), and who Died in London on January 2, was a son of Mr. Smith, Headmaster of the Grafton High School, Grafton, New South Wales, Australia, where a well-known citizen of Hong Kong, Mr. Tse Tsan Tai, received his early education.

The late Sir Grafton was the author of many famous publications, including the “Search for Man’ s Ancestors,” 1931.

Our readers may also remember that Mr. Tse Tsan Tai is the author of a famous publication, “The Real Situation of Eden,” and “The Origin of the Chinese,” 1914, followed by 49 (forty nine) supplementary pamphlets and special newspaper articles, proving the upheaval of Central Asia, and the Subsidence of the “Pacific Continent,” and that the Cradle of the Human Race is in Chinese Turkestan.

In reviewing this book at the time, the “Daily Press” wrote “A Remarkable Book;” and Dr. G.E. Morrison, LL.D., London “Times” correspondent, commented the book was “An epoch-making work.” The late Rev. Dr. Timothy

---

a. Published as: Anon. [Tse, Tsan Tai], “Racial Knowledge. Two Distinguished Contributors,” *Hongkong Daily Press*, January 9, 1937,

Richard, D.D., LL.D., Secretary Emeritus, Christian Literature Society for China, wrote "I should be glad if every missionary would purchase a copy of your work."

### **In Bodleian Library**

We understand that Mr. Tse Tsan Tai's publications are now in the famous Bodleian Library of Oxford University, and other University Libraries of Europe and the United States of America, and also the Vatican Library of Rome.

The New York Academy of Sciences has expressed the following significant appreciation of Mr. Tse Tsan Tai's work:

The work is particularly interesting to our Library, because of your ethnological treatment of the descent of the different races, and will doubtless prove of much value.

Mr. Tse Tsan Tai's discoveries and findings are the result of over forty years of continuous investigations and quiet research work for the reconciliation of Science and Religion, and the furtherance of World Peace.

It is a noteworthy coincidence that Australia should have given the world two such worthy and Distinguished sons.

## **Notes**

1. See instructions on page 243 to change "Sir Rudyard Kipling" into "Mr. Rudyard Kipling."

## Chapter 6

# Tse's Package: Letters and Instructions

### Tse's Exchanges with Clara B. Mitchell

**Letter (July 25th 1937)**

Miss Clara B. Mitchell

c/o Y.W.C.A.

Hongkong

Hongkong,

25th July 1937

Dear Miss Mitchell,

I am still wondering how we could have sat & talked for 6 hours, when you called to see me at Noon yesterday. & no doubt the exchanges of views re Religion & other matters was mutually interesting. I much appreciated your frank outspokenness, & "choice" English & particularly your remark "we are adults and not children"!

Your story of Dr. Sun Fo's "mothers", & the "Sung" family was quite a revelation, as I have never had an opportunity to meet them, having retired from the political arena since the foundation of the Chinese Republic, in spite of the fact that I and my civalrous English friends opened the way for the late Dr. Sun Yat Sen & his following the Kuo Min Tang party.

I was greatly interested to hear the narrative of your travels in China, & how you have helped the Chinese, particularly your 20 adopted sons! A brief record would be most interesting, & I would be only too glad to tell the Chinese about your good work, when I am able to write.

Regarding the Radium Pitchblende sample you took away don't trouble, but, just tell me from your past experiences with Madam Curie's people as a chemical analyst whether it is high grade or lowgrade etc. Don't mention my name, & please keep this matter *confidential* for the present!

You are at perfect liberty to come and photograph my 1894 design of the Dirigible air-ship "China".

With kind regards,  
Yours sincerely,  
Tse Tsan Tai

P.T.O.

—

P.S. I hope you will find all my books and articles interesting & useful, as I have been working to reconcile Science and Religion for the past 25 years — all for the honour of God and the Holy Bible. Tse.

Miss Clara B. Mitchell  
c/o Y.W.C.A.  
Hampden  
Dear Miss Mitchell,  
I am still wondering how we could have said a better for  
Gloria, when you called to see me at home yesterday. I no doubt the  
exchange of views on Religion & other matters was mutually interesting.  
I much appreciated your frank outspokenness, & "choice" English, and  
particularly your remark "He is a adult and not children!"

Hampden  
28<sup>th</sup> July 1937.

Figure 6.1: The first lines of Tse's letter

**Tse Authorizes Mitchell (Sept. 1st, 1937)**

Bankers:

The Hongkong & Shanghai Banking  
Corporation,  
Hong Kong.

Address:

The Tai Hing Mining Company,  
No. 239, Hennesey Road,  
Hong Kong.

I, the undersigned hereby authorize Miss Clara B. Mitchell to obtain the best possible terms and conditions for the printing and publishing of my following three books and supplementary pamphlets by a leading London Publishing Firm for sale in Great Britain, her Colonies and Doiminions, the UNited States of America, and other countries in the world, together with translation rights:

*Revised edition*

- "The Creation: The Real Situation of Eden: and the Origin of the Chinese" with supplementary "Map of Asia". (1914).  
also  
Supplementary Pamphlets Nos. 1 tp 12, and also No.13 to No. 49.
- Ancient Chinese Art.
- A Short History of the Chinese Revolution.

Terms and conditions to be submitted for my approval.

Tse Tsan Tai

Hong Kong, 1st September 1937.

P.S. A few suitable illustrations dealing with the Upheaval of Central Asia and the Subsidence of the "Pacific" Continent, and Prehistoric Discoveries, might be included at the discretion of the Publishers.

*Note.* These three books ought to sell in millions, when properly advertised.

**Books (undated)***Books by*

1. The man who organized the Chinese Great Revolution, which gave China its Liberty and Independence in a Republic (1887 to 1912).
2. The man who discovered "Eden", the Cradle of the Human Race in Chinese Turkestan, and reconciled Science and Religion by his discoveries (1894 to 1936.) (Paradise regained).
3. The man who advocated the "A.B.C" Movement for the Union of America, Britain and China to stop war, and hasten World Peace and the success of the Israel Movement.(1887 to 1934.),  
See article "World Peace" in Hongkong Daily Press" of 21st August 1937.
4. The man who invented the Dirigible Airship "China" (1894 to 1899) with its Autogyro system of propulsion.  
N.B. See correspondence with Sir Hiram s. Maxim of London.

See the world's leading illustrated newspapers:

1. "Illustrated London News." December 14, 1907.
2. "Colliers Weekly, U.S.A" July 11, 1908.
3. "The Far Eastern Review." January 1908.
4. "International Trade Journal." May 2, 1908.

and other periodicals of the time.

**Corrections (undated)***Corrections*

1. *Ancient Chinese Art*  
Sir Rudyard Kipling should be Mr. Rudyard Kipling.
2. Send all letters and Bank drafts — c/o Mr. Tse Shu Man  
"Hong Kong Daily Press"  
Marnia House  
Hongkong
3. Send all parcels of books, etc. through the "Hongkong Daily Press"  
London Office  
No. 53, Fleet Street, E.C.4  
London

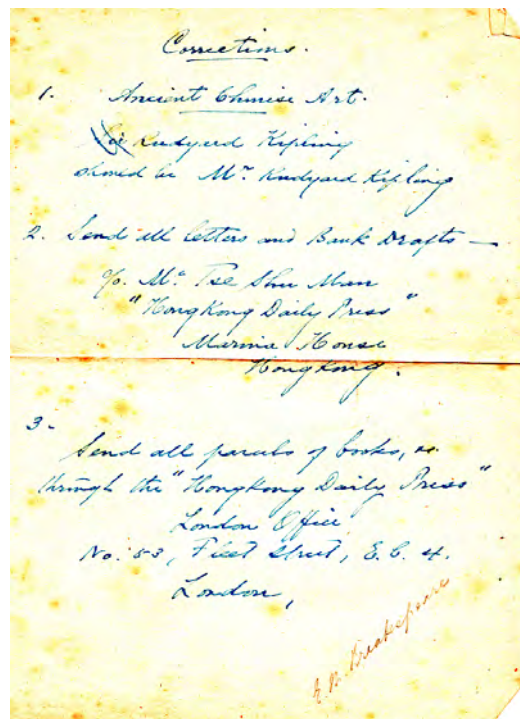


Figure 6.2: Corrections

**Note (undated)**

*Note.*

These 3 books have never been properly advertised or sold outside of the British Crown Colony of Hongkong.

I have been waiting up to date to find a suitable firm of Publishers in London and New York, U.S.A.

N.B. When a suitable firm of publishers has been found to undertake the publishing and sale of my 3 books, please telegraph the single word "serene".

Full particulars of terms and conditions should follow by *Air Mail*.



**Mitchell's Visiting Card (undated)**

The following bilingual visiting card<sup>1</sup> was found in Tse's package of manuscripts:

Clara B. Mitchell. M. T. SC.  
274 Hung Jao Road,  
P.O. BOX 1467 SHANGHAI  
BAY COTTAGE,  
553 MEANWOOD ROAD  
LEEDS, ENGLAND

英國工科碩士  
米珠  
上海虹橋陸二七四號  
上海郵政總局信箱第一四六七號

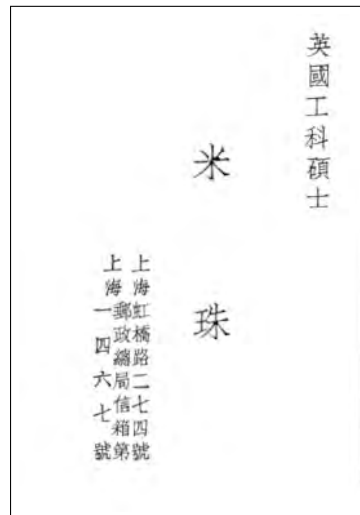


Figure 6.3: Mitchell's visiting card

## Notes

1. "Professor Versey" is handwritten on the "English" side of the card. The words "Bay Cottage" are deleted and the word "Meanwood" is expanded to "553 Meanwood Road."

## Chapter 7

# Chesney Duncan: “Tse Tsan Tai. His Political & Journalistic Career,” 1917<sup>b</sup>

The career of Mr. Tse Tsan Tai has been more remarkable than that of the vast majority of his fellow Chinese citizens.

Famed as a social and political reformer, scholar, and patriot, he has also won renown as a capable business man, philanthropist, journalist, author, inventor of ditigibles, historian, Art collector and connoisseur of ancient Chinese Art (paintings). Further, he is a staunch teetotaler and non-smoker.

Born in Sydney, N.S, Wales, Australia, on May 16th, 1872, he was in November 1879 baptized by his Godfather, the Rt. Rev. Bishop C. C. Greenway, of the Grafton (New South Wales) Church of England. He received his elementary education at Grafton High School, and when seventeen years of age, (1887) p. 584

---

b. Source: Reprint (8 pages) by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong, 1917 of: Chesney Duncan, “Tse Tsan Tai 謝纘泰: His Political & Journalistic Career,” A Brief Record, in *Present Day Impressions of the Far East and Prominent and Progressive Chinese at Home and Abroad: The History, People, Commerce, Industries and Resources of China, Hongkong, Indo-China, Malaya and Netherlands India*, ed. W. H. Morton Cameron and W. Feldwick (London: Globe Encyclopedia Company, 1917), 583–585 —Margin pagination reflects both editions. Lay-out and editing detail based on a scan of reprint edition.

arrived with his family at Hongkong from the Antipodes. Here he completed his education at Queen's College and entered the Government Service, where he remained ten years chiefly performing clerical duties connected with Public Works

In 1900 he was serving as Compradore to the Hongkong Branch of Boyd Kaye & Co., Import & Export Merchants, whose head office was at Shanghai. At the same time he became Assistant Compradore to Shewan Tomes & Co. In 1902, he with Messrs. Alfred Cunningham and A.G. Ward, helped to float the South China Morning Post, Ltd., and still holds an interest in it. The journal of this concern is now one of the leading newspapers of South China. He was appointed Compradore of this Newspaper Company, and has also contributed to the paper p. 2 in support of the Reform Movement in China. In 1907 he became a member of the Canton-Macao Railway Syndicate, and joined Wing Keo & Co., the famous Coal Merchants, Shipping Agents, Ship-chandlers and Stevedores, serving them with distinction in the capacity of Assistant Manager. He left Wing Kee & Co. in 1913, and joined the Hon. Mr. Wei Yuk C.M.G, (now, Sir Boshan Wei Yuk) as partner in a Mining business. The partners named here still interested in the business. In 1915 he rejoined Shewan Tomes & Co. as Assistant Compradore, a responsible position which he still holds.

Mr. Tse Tsan Tai was an old friend of the late Sir Hiram Maxim, to whom in 1894 he imparted his ideas respecting the best method of making a serviceable dirigible. (For years they corresponded on matters connected with Science and Religion). This was at a time when little was thought of aircraft. Mr. Tse Tsan Tai may, therefore, claim to have been among the first to give to the World ideas, which have led to far reaching developments. He has always held that the conquest of the air would be accomplished by dirigibles, but Sir Hiram had a firm belief in the aeroplane. In 1896 Mr, Tse Tsan Tai invented and presented to the Imperial British Authorities a new style of military sun-helmet, which was utilized, and in respect of which he received grateful acknowledgments.

As regards Chinese politics, he has never obtruded himself very prominently in them, his main object in life being to do his best for the Chinese Nation

irrespective of creed or party. Having helped the Chinese to regain their Independence during the long struggle from 1890 to 1912, he retired from the political arena as unostentatiously as he entered and laboured in it. He is an adherent of no Political Party in China.

In 1890 he founded at No. 1, Pak Tze Lane, Hongkong, the Chinese Patriotic Reform Association, which adopted as its motto "Ducit amor patriae." In 1894 he and his friends joined hands with Dr. Sun Yat Sen and his friends, and they formed the Hing Chung Whui, Society, which established its Headquarters at No. 18, Staunton Street. He was the Author of the Manifesto to the Emperor Kwang Hsu, which was published in the London, Singapore, and Hongkong newspapers of 30th May, 1895.

p. 3

An attempt was made to capture Canton City and establish a Provisional Government on the 26th October, 1895, but it met with failure.

In 1899 he published and circulated widely a cartoon on "The Situation in the Far East," which appeared in many foreign illustrated papers. This was designed to arouse the Chinese nation, and to warn the people of the impending danger of partitioning the Empire. In letters to his old friend, the great reformer Kang Yu Wei, he always counselled Union and Cooperation in the great work of Reform and Independence. Chief amongst his friends who quietly co-operated with him in the great cause of Reform and Independence in China were Dr. G.E. Morrison, Dr. Timothy Richard, Dr. Yung Wing, LL.D., the late Sir Kai Ho Kai, Kt., C.M.G., D. Warren-Smith, Alfred Cunningham, Thomas H. Reid, Chesney Duncan, Mrs. Alice Little, B. A. Hale and Thomas Petrie.

He secretly planned and organized during 1901 and 1902, with his old friend Dr. Yung Wing, LL.D., and others co-operating from abroad, a movement for Independence.

His father and brother Mr. Tse Tsi-shau, Mr. Hung Chuen Fook and Mr. Li Pak, were prominently connected with this movement, which was treacherously exposed, and the attempt to surprise and capture Canton City on the night of January 28th, 1903, failed, numerous arrests being made in Hongkong, and at Canton. Mr. Alfred Cunningham and Mr. J. Scott Harston were instrumental in

effecting the release of the imprisoned reformers.

Regarding Mr. Tse Tsan Tai's political work in connection the Great Revolution of 1911, Mr. Alfred Cunningham (Editor of the "Hongkong Daily Press," "South China Morning Post," etc. Correspondent "Daily Mail," "New York Sun," etc.) wrote on May 4th, 1913

p. 4 Of my work in Hongkong no one is better qualified to speak on my behalf than yourself. Were we not colleagues together, and did we not use every effort in our power to promote the cause of progress in China? You know the risks—from the time the small Reform Committee met surreptitiously in the Colony you kept the flame burning at constant risk of your own freedom, your life, and of those you held dearest. Mine was an easier part, to hammer away in the paper in the interests of Reform, and to influence the Authorities. For years we worked together by means of the paper in the one Cause.

Mr. Thomas H. Reid (Editor of the "China Mail," Hongkong, 1894–1903; "Straits Times," etc.; "London Times" Correspondent for South China; Correspondent "The Standard," "New York Herald, etc.) wrote on November 20th, 1912:

"You have at least the great satisfaction of knowing that you assisted in placing four hundred millions of your fellow-men on the road to a better and more humane life, and in initiating a movement which will go down in history as one of the most momentous in the records of the world."

Mr. Reid was the first to openly champion the Great Cause in his newspaper, at a time when others ridiculed the movement.

As founder of the Hongkong Chinese Club, Mr. Tse Tsan Tai will long be remembered, whilst the good work he did as a member of the Canton-Macao Railway Syndicate, in conducting negotiations in the important matter of the cancellation of the Macao Railway Convention of 1904, constituted most valuable public service.

He will, however, be best remembered by the reading public of Western and Eastern lands on account of his book, "The Creation; The Real Situation of Eden; and the Origin of the Chinese" (published by Kelly & Walsh, Ltd., in 1914), though his forthcoming work, "Proofs of the Deluge," which is supplementary to his famous maiden effort as author and historian, promises to be even more noteworthy, for it will include geological, geographical and scientific proofs of the upheaval and subsidence of vast continents, and the cause of the flooding of the world by a Diluvian Tidal Wave. That the new work is assured a hearty welcome by the leading universities of the world and by several learned societies is shown by the tenor of the grateful acknowledgments of his initial work from the World's great Universities, the New York Academy of Sciences, and the Smithsonian Institution at Washington, U.S.A.

p. 5

The following is a brief record of Mr. Tse Tsan Tai's journalistic work:—

**1891** Advocated the abolition of the evil practice of "Fungshui" in the Chinese Empire, in order to prepare the way for making roads, and the building of railways, and mining. See pamphlet.—18th April, 1891.

**1894** Advocated the suppression of the Indian Opium Trade. (Pamphlets distributed in England and in China), See "Hongkong Daily Press," 16th May, 1894.

Protested against the slandering of the Chinese Community of Hongkong. See "Hongkong Daily Press" of 30th May, 1894.

**1895** Author of Reform Manifesto to Emperor Kwang Hsu. See London, Singapore and Hongkong newspapers of 30th May, 1895

**1898** Advocated the formation of a Society for the suppression of Foot-binding in China.

Took a leading part in the formation of the Anti-Opium Society of South China.

Advocated the founding of a Chinese Club and Free Library in Hongkong. See Hongkong newspapers, 9th January, 1898.

**1899** Founded the Hongkong Chinese Club.

Solved the problem of Aerial Navigation by dirigible air-ships, propelled by motor-driven propellers, in 1894. (Plans, etc., sent to Sir Hiram S. Maxim of England).

Author of world-famous Cartoon "The Situation in the Far East," (19th July, 1890).

**1900** Advocated Religious toleration, and the establishment of an Independent Christian Church for China, (21st August, 1900). See letters to Rt. Rev. Bishop Hoare, D.D., Dr. Timothy Richard, LL.D. and Pastor Kranz.

Author of Appeal—"Liberty, Freedom and Reform." See Hongkong newspapers of 12th February, 1900.

**1901** Advocated reforms in the Sanitary Administration of Hongkong. See letter p. 6 signed "T" in "Hongkong Daily Press," of 22nd May, 1901.

**1902** Advocated Popular Representation for Chinese in Hongkong (Legislative Council). Urged that, Chinese Representatives should be elected by the people instead of being nominated by the Governor, as at present. See "Hongkong Daily Press," 6th June, 1902.

**1904** Advocated the suppression of slavery in China, See English and Chinese newspapers of 8th November, 1904.

Advocated the formation of The World's Chinese Students Federation. See letters to Dr. Wu Lien Teh, LL.D., M.A., M.D., 1st October, 1904.

Advocated the formation of an International Society for the protection of Ancient Historical Relics and the universal suppression of vandalism. See World's newspapers, and Hongkong newspapers of 22nd August, 1904.

Advocated a scheme for educating the poor boys of the Hoiping district of China, and the sending of the sons of the rich to Europe and the United States for their education.



Author of the first Chinese Diary of the Russo-Japanese War. (Received appreciations from high Japanese officials).—Published 22nd July, 1904.

**1905** Advocated a scheme for the termination of the United States boycott movement in China, See “South China Morning Post” of 28th December, 1905. p. 585

**1906** Condemned the Canton Bund Reclamation Works, and advocated a scheme for the proper conservation of the Canton River and the building of a New City. See Chinese newspapers of 3rd August, 1906. See “South China Morning Post” of 2nd August, 1906.

Advocated the building of a Chinese Town Hall in Hongkong. See “South China Morning Post,” 31st January, 1906.

**1907** Advocated the immediate colonization of Manchuria and the development of its mineral resources by the natives of Kwangtung and Fukien provinces. See “Sheung Po,” 24th September, 1907. p. 7

In charge of the negotiations for the cancellation of the Canton-Macao Railway Convention of 1904.

**1908** Advocated the formation of a National Society for the protection and preservation of China’s historical relics. See Chinese newspapers of 6th October, 1908.

**1909** Claimed that the Chinese were the first to discover Northern Australia during the Ming Dynasty. (See “China Mail” of Hongkong June 80th, 1909, and Chinese newspapers). Advocated an investigation by the Chinese Government.

**1910** Advocated a closer understanding between the United States of America and China, and discussed the future control of the Pacific (See “South China Morning Post,” October 24th, 1910).

Advocated the founding of the China Art Society for the protection and preservation of Chinese Works of Art and for the uplifting of Chinese Art.

(See "South China Morning Post" and Chinese newspapers of December 20th, 1910.)

**1911** Author of Open Letter "Russia and China" to the Governments of the European Powers, paving the way for the Revolution; condemning secret understanding for the partitioning of the Chinese Empire, and advocating Universal Peace and the Brotherhood of (See "South China Morning Post 22nd, 1911, and the World's Press.)

Exposed "Lin Shao Yang" the author (European) of "A Chinese Appeal to Christendom." See "Hongkong Daily Press" of 25th August and 16th October, 1911.

**1912** Advocated an alliance between China and Japan (Japan and her Ally Great Britain) for the preservation of the Peace of The World. (See "Republican p. 8 Advocate" of China, August 8th, 1912).

**1914** Author of—"The Creation; The Real Situation of Eden and the Origin of the Chinese" (English and Chinese Editions).

**1915** Author of pamphlet—"The Cradle of the Human Race"—(Chinese Turkestan.)

**1917** Author of pamphlet—"Proofs of the Deluge." Author of pamphlet—"Proofs of the Deluge and the Great upheaval of Central Asia, and the Subsidence of the Pacific Continent.

Author of pamphlet—"China in Time of the Deluge; Origin of Crustaceans of Taihu Lake; China the 'Shinar' of Genesis."

Exposed German machinations in China. See letter signed "Recluse" in "Hongkong Daily Press" of 2nd April, 1917.

Also author of numerous political articles and letters,

Mr. Tse's father, Mr. Tse Yet Chong, otherwise John See, who is a native of the Hoiping district of Kwang Tung province, China, was a pioneer of Chinese

trade and intercourse with Australia. He proceeded there in 1864, taking his wife, who was among the first of Chinese ladies to land in the Antipodes. Mr. Tse Yet Chong was proprietor of the Tai Yick firm of Sydney, New South Wales.

Mr. Tse Tsan Tai's hobby is Ancient Chinese Art. His collection of priceless masterpieces is famous, and is reputed to be the finest in the world. Some of the pictures are two thousand years old.

His pictures have been critically examined and greatly admired by Prince Waldemar, Prince Reuss, Dr. G. A. Voretzsch, (Collector and Connoisseur), H. E. Oscar Stuebal, J. Nelson Fraser (Indian Education Service), Sir Charles Eliot (Vice Chancellor, Hongkong University), T. K. Dealy (Director of Education, Hongkong), F. Perzusi (Expert of the Berlin Museum), and others.

Mr. Tse Tsan Tai, who was married in Hongkong in 182, has three sons and four daughters.

"Seeton," on Seeton Estate, in the New Territory, is the name of his Summer Retreat; whilst his Office is in the Compradore's Department of the firm of Messrs Shewan, Tomes & Co., St. George's Building, Hongkong.



# Index

- Adam, 10, 12, 23  
“The admonition of the female historian”, 207  
Aksu, 7, 72  
American Asiatic Expedition, 225  
*Ancient Chinese History*, 1, 3  
Andrews, Roy Chapman 1884–1960, 223  
Anhui 安徽, 171  
antiquities  
    protection of —, 185  
Ararat, 28, 74, 75, 85, 103, 107, 108  
Arphaxad, 18, 23, 35  
Asshur, 23
- 八卦 (bagua), 19, 206  
百子里 (Baizi Li), 152  
Baizi Li 百子里, 152  
Banerji, Rakhaldas Bandyopadhyay 1885–1930, 232  
會皇保 (Baohuanghui), 165  
Baohuanghui 保皇會, 165, 180  
Beijing 北京, 144, 160, 161, 174, 175, 179, 180, 182–185, 189, 190, 196, 198, 199  
Belus, 9  
Berlin Mission, 177  
*The Bible*, 1, 3, 4, 6, 7, 9, 20, 24, 28, 44, 46, 72, 228  
Binyon, Robert Laurence 1869–1943, 207, 218  
Black race, 105  
Blake, Henry Arthur 1840–1918, 167, 171  
Bland, John Otway Percy 1863–1945, 173  
Bojante-kul, 26  
British Museum, 207  
British Museum Expedition, 226  
Brotherhood of Man, 2, 44, 104  
Brown, John Macmillan 1845–1935, 120, 122, 123  
Buddha, 234–236  
Buddhism, 208, 213, 234–236  
Buddhist missionaries, 234  
Buddhist sutras, 235
- 蔡萼 (Cai E), 196  
Cai E 蔡萼 1882–1916, 196  
Cain, 12, 14, 26  
Cainan, 12, 13  
Canaan, 30, 105  
倉頡 (Cangjie), 26, 206  
Cangjie 倉頡, 19, 26, 29, 67, 206  
Cantlie, James 1851–1926, 155  
Canton, *see* Guangzhou 廣州, *see* Guangzhou 廣州  
*Canton Times*, 120, 122  
Carnarvon, *see* Herbert, G. E. Stanhope Molyneux  
Carter, Howard 1874–1939, 127  
Chait, Ralph M. 1893–1975, 218  
Chaldees, 231  
*Chambers Encyclopedia*, 1  
Chan Fun, *see* Chen Fen 陳芬  
Chan Kam-to, *see* Chen Jintao 陳錦濤  
Chan Siu-pak, *see* Chen Shaobai 陳少白  
Chan Tzu Chien, *see* Zhan Ziqian 展子虔  
Chang Chitung, *see* Zhang Zhidong 張之洞  
Chau Chiu-ngok, *see* Zhou Chaoyue 周朝嶽  
Chen Chin-tao, *see* Chen Jintao 陳錦濤  
陳芬 (Chen Fen), 151  
Chen Fen 陳芬, 151  
陳錦濤 (Chen Jintao), 156  
Chen Jintao 陳錦濤 1871–1939, 156  
Chen Lanbin 陳蘭彬 1816–1895, 169  
陳少白 (Chen Shaobai), 154  
Chen Shaobai 陳少白 1869–1934, 154, 155, 169, 170  
Cheng Put-san, *see* Zheng Bichen 鄭弼臣  
Cheung Sau-por, *see* Zhang Shoubo 張壽波  
Chi You 蚩尤, 36  
Chi Yu, *see* Chi You 蚩尤  
Chien Si, *see* Qian Nai 錢迺  
Chihli, *see* Zhili 直隸  
Chin Chi Whang Ti, *see* Qin Shi Huangdi 秦始皇帝  
Chin Lan-pin, *see* Chen Lanbin 陳蘭彬  
*China Express and Telegraph*, 117  
*China Mail*, 148, 152–154, 160, 167, 170, 171, 175, 178, 180, 194

- p, 178
- China Merchant's Steam Navigation Co., 151
- China Press*, 98
- China Republican*, 149
- China Times*, 149
- China's Ancient History, 9
- "A Chinese Appeal to Christendom" (Lin Shao-yang, 1911), 181
- Chinese Circulating Herald*, 198
- Chinese Geological Survey, 222, 223
- Chinese Independence Party of Australia, 150
- Chinese Turkestan, 3, 6, 7, 9, 14, 24, 26, 44, 57–59, 63, 67, 70–75, 78, 80, 84, 85, 88, 93, 95, 96, 99, 100, 106, 108, 122, 127, 130, 225, 228, 237, *see* Xinjiang 新疆
- Ching, *see* Qing 慶親王
- Chongde 崇德 r. 1636–1643, 144
- Chongzheng 崇禎帝 r. 1627–1644, 144
- Chou An Huei, *see* Chou'anhui 籌安會
- Chou'anhui 籌安會, 197
- Chow, *see* Zhou 周
- Christian Literature Society for China, 238
- Chu Yuan-chang, *see* Zhu Yuanzhang 朱元璋
- Chu Yung Kung Kung (Shi), *see* Zhurong Gonggong (Shi) 祝融共工氏
- 傳模移寫 (chuan mo yi xie), 212
- Chung Kwok Hop Chung Ching Fu Ser Whui, *see* Zhongguo hezhong zhengfu shehui 中國合眾府政社會
- Chung Ngoi Sun Po, *see* Zhong-Wai xinbao 中外新報
- Chung Wah, *see* Zhonghua 中華
- Chus, 9
- Chwan Hu Kao Yang, *see* Zhuan Xu Gaoyang Shi 顓頊高陽氏
- Clare's History of the World*, 1
- Coal Hill, 144
- Commonwealth Government, 165
- Confucius, 30, 149, 157
- 'New — ' (as sobriquet for Kang Youwei), 157
- Contemporary Review*, 194
- Cowen, T. ?–?, 147, 154
- Cradle of the Human Race, 3, 9, 84, 85, 93, 95, 96, 206, 225, 228
- Cretan Archipelago, 15
- Crook, Alfred Herbert 1873–1955, 61, 66, 71, 77, 88–93, 97, 98
- Cunningham, Alfred 1870–1918?, 147, 148, 167, 172, 175–177, 248–250
- 大將軍 (da jiangjun), 215
- Da Qing 大清 1644–1911, 144
- 大舜 (Da Shun), 40
- Da Shun 大舜, 40
- 大禹 (Da Yu), 23
- Da Yu 大禹, 23
- Daily Chronicle*, 194
- Daily Mail*, 148
- Daily Press*, 188, 237
- 岱廟 (Daimiao), 206
- Daimiao 岱廟, 206
- Daoyuan 道元, 217
- Darwin, Charles Robert 1809–1882, 65, 106, 223
- 大同殿 (Datong), 204
- 大通 (Datong), 171
- Datong 大同殿, 203, 204, 214
- Datong 大通, 158, 171
- David Sassoon & Co., Messrs., 151
- 德壽 (De Shou), 171
- De Shou 德壽 ?–1903, 171, 172
- Dealy, Thomas Kirkman 1861–1924, 220
- 帝侖高辛氏 (Di Ku Gaoxin Shi), 42
- 帝嚳高辛氏 (Di Ku Gaoxin Shi), 23
- Di Ku Gaoxin Shi 帝侖高辛氏, 42
- 帝堯陶唐氏 (Di Yao Taotang Shi), 23
- 地皇 (Dihuang), 12
- Dihuang 地皇, 12
- Dionysius Periegetes, 79
- 帝堯陶唐氏 (Diyao Taotang Shi), 18
- 弟子吳道玄 (Dizi Wu Daoxuan), 217
- dragon, 19
- 讀 (du), 208
- Duncan, Chesney 1854–1935, 143, 145, 147, 149, 152, 153, 194, 249
- Dunhuang 敦煌, 34
- Eden, 7, 10, 26, 49, 134
- Egypt, 231
- Eight Trigrams, 19, 206
- Eliot, Charles Norton Edgcumbe 1862–1931, 220
- Encyclopaedian Society of Macao, 69, 70, 78
- Encyclopedia Britannica*, 1
- Enoch, 26
- Enos, 12, 13
- Eratosthenes, 79
- Euphrates, 7, 72

- Euphrates Valley, 3  
 Europe, 45
- Fairfield Osborn, Henry 1857–1935, 223  
 范寬 (Fan Kuan), 213  
 Fan Kuan 范寬, 213  
 Fangcun 芳村, 176, 177  
 鳳山 (Feng Shan), 182  
 Feng Shan 鳳山?–1911, 182  
 Fengtian 奉天, 147, 186  
 Fengtien, *see* Fengtian 奉天  
 Five Elements, 11  
 Fong Chuen, *see* Fangcun 芳村  
 Foo Yan Man Ser, *see* Furen Wenshe 輔仁文社  
 Fourth American Asiatic Expedition, 223  
 Francisco Tse Yet, *see* Xie Shipin [Tse Yet, Francisco]  
 謝詩屏  
 Fraser, J. Nelson 1869–1918, 220  
 Fu Chi, *see* Fu Qi 孚琦  
 孚琦 (Fu Qi), 180  
 Fu Qi 孚琦 1857–1911, 180  
 Fuh, *see* Fuxi 伏羲  
 Fuki, *see* Fuxi 伏羲  
 Fukumoto, M. ?–?, 170  
 Fung Shan, *see* Feng Shan 鳳山  
 輔仁文社 (Furen Wenshe), 152  
 Furen Wenshe 輔仁文社, 152  
 伏羲 (Fuxi), 206  
 伏羲太昊 (Fuxi Taihao), 17  
 Fuxi 伏羲, 17, 18, 24, 29, 43, 206
- Gaib gorge, 22, 27  
 Gait, Edward Albert 1863–1950, 233  
 Ganges, 7, 72, 84, 106  
 Garden of Eden, 6–9, 14, 206, 225  
 Geikie, Archibald 1835–1924, 61, 62, 65  
 哥老會 (Gelaohui), 166  
 Gelaohui 哥老會, 166  
 Genesis, 3, 6–14, 19–22, 26, 30, 35, 58, 59, 71–75,  
 77–79, 83–85, 95, 101, 108, 109, 121, 127,  
 129, 131, 228, 232  
 Gihon, 7, 72  
 Gobi Desert, 14  
 Gobi desert, 7  
 共工 (Gonggong), 20  
 Gouangdong 廣東, 181  
 Grabau, Amadeus William 1870–1946, 222  
 Grafton, 149  
 Sir Grafton Elliot Smith 1871–1937, 237  
 Greenway, Charles Capel 1818–1905, 149  
 Grum-Grshimailo, Grigory Yefimovich 1860–1936, 27  
 骨法用筆 (gu fa yong bi), 211  
 顧愷之 (Gu Kaizhi), 207  
 Gu Kaizhi 顧愷之, 207, 208  
 觀世音大士像 (Guan Shi Yin Dashi xiang), 217  
 Guangzhou 廣州, 176  
 廣東省 (Guangdong sheng), 149  
 Guangdong 廣東, 149, 156, 179, 189  
 Guangxu 光緒 emperor, r. 1875–1908, 167, 184  
 Guangxu 光緒 r. 1875–1908, 154, 249  
 Guangzhou 廣州, 145, 146, 152–154, 160, 165–167,  
 170–173, 176–178, 180, 182, 200  
 Guanyin 觀音, 217  
 郭氏 (Guo Shi), 149  
 Guo Shi 郭氏, 149  
 Guomindang 國民黨, 239
- Hague Peace Tribunal, 205  
 Hale, Bertram Augustus 1870–1958?, 147  
 Hale, Bertram Augustus 1870–1958?, 182, 249  
 Ham, 12, 22, 28, 29, 106, 108  
 Hami, 27  
 Hamitic, 105, 128–130  
 漢 (Han), 9, 43, 206, 207, 213  
 Han 漢, 206, 213, 235  
 Han 漢朝, 9  
 Hankou 漢口, 171  
 Hankow, *see* Hankou 漢口  
 Hara, S. ?–?, 170  
 Harston, J. Scott 1872–?, 177  
 何東 (He Dong), 160  
 He Dong 何東 1862–1956, 160  
 何啟大壯士 (He Qi da zhuangshi), 152  
 He Qi 何啟 1859–1914, 147, 152–154, 161, 164, 169,  
 171, 173, 249  
 He Zhang 何章 ?–?, 157  
 Heber, 23, 35, 42  
 Hedin, Sven Anders 1855–1952, 206  
 Hekou 河口, 180  
 河南 (Henan), 30, 42  
 Henan 河南, 30, 42  
 Henoch, 12, 13, 17–19, 29  
 Herbert, G. E. Stanhope Molyneux (Carnarvon) 1866–  
 1923, 127  
 河圖 (hetu), 206  
 何章易一 (Hezhang Yiyi), 157

- Hiddakel, 7  
 hieroglyphic  
   script, 67  
 Himalaya, 69  
 Hing Chung Whui, *see* Xingzhonghui 興中會  
 平山 (Hiriyama), 170  
 Hiriyama 1870?–1940?, 170  
 Ho Hau, *see* Hekou 河口  
 Ho Jeong, *see* He Zhang 何章  
 Ho Kai, *see* He Qi 何啓  
 Ho Tung, *see* He Dong 何東  
 Ho Tung [Bosman], Sir Robert 1862–1956, 160, 161  
 Hoangho, *see* Huanghe 黃河, *see* Huanghe 黃河  
 Hoare, Joseph Charles 1851–1906, 171  
 Hoi Ping, *see* Kaiping 開平  
 Holmes, Charles John 1868–1936, 219  
 Honan, *see* Henan 河南  
 洪春魁 (Hong Chunkui), 165  
 Hong Chunkui 洪春魁 1835–1904, 165  
 洪和 (Hong He), 165  
 Hong He 洪和 1835–1904, 165  
 洪全福 (Hong Quanfu), 165  
 Hong Quanfu 洪全福 1836–1904, 145, 165, 172, 173, 175–178, 249  
 洪秀全 (Hong Xiuquan), 165  
 Hong Xiuquan 洪秀全 1814–1864, 145, 165  
 Hongkong Chinese Club, 159  
*Hongkong Daily Press*, 82, 88, 93, 95, 97, 99, 103, 148, 152, 167, 168, 171, 172, 174–178, 181, 182  
*Hongkong Telegraph*, 149, 152–154, 171, 174  
 Hongwu 洪武 r. 1368–1398, 144  
 Hsia, *see* Xia 夏  
 Hsia Kuei, *see* Xia Gui 夏珪  
 Hsieh Ho, *see* Xie He 謝赫  
 Hsuan Tung, *see* Xuanton 宣統  
 胡幹芝 (Hu Ganzhi), 151  
 Hu Ganzhi 胡幹芝, 151  
 胡漢民 (Hu Hanmin), 180  
 Hu Hanmin 胡漢民 1879–1936, 180  
 胡禮垣 (Hu Liyuan), 163  
 Hu Liyuan 胡禮垣 1847–1916, 163  
 花甲子 (Huajiazhi), 37  
 黃國瑜 (Huang Guoyu), 151  
 Huang Guoyu 黃國瑜, 151  
 黃勝 (Huang Sheng), 153  
 Huang Sheng 黃勝 1827–1902, 153, 154  
 黃興 (Huang Xing), 179  
 Huang Xing 黃興 1874–1916, 179, 180  
 黃詠商 (Huang Yongshang), 153  
 Huang Yongshang 黃詠商 1856–1897, 153, 154  
 皇帝軒轅氏 (Huangdi Xuanyuan Shi), 18, 23  
 Huangdi 皇帝, 18, 35–38, 43  
 Huanggang 皇崗, 179  
 Huanghe 黃河, 222, 223  
 Huanghe 黃河, 8, 9, 14, 19, 23, 30, 37, 39, 41, 62, 206, 213, 223, 224, 231, 232  
 Hubei 湖北, 171, 181  
 Huizhou 惠州, 169, 171, 172  
 Hunan 湖南, 162, 163, 166  
 Hung Chuen Fook, *see* Hong Quanfu 洪全福  
 Hung Chuen-Fook, *see* Hong Quanfu 洪全福  
 Hung Chun-fui, *see* Hong Chunkui 洪春魁  
 Hung Hsiu-chuan, *see* Hong Xiuquan 洪秀全  
 Hung Wo, *see* Hong He 洪和  
 Hung Wu, *see* Hongwu 洪武  
 火 (huo), 11, 209  
 Hupeh, *see* Hubei 湖北  
 Hwang Ho, *see* Huanghe 黃河  
 Hwang Ti, *see* Huangdi 皇帝  
 Imperial Chinese Telegraph Administration, 167  
 “Indignation” (Tse, 1903), 178  
 Indus, 7, 72, 106, 232  
 International Society for the protection of Ancient Historical Relics, proposal for — (Tse, 1904), 179  
 Itoh, M. ?–?, 170  
 Iwasaki, H. ?–?, 170  
 Jacob Lao, *see* Lao, Jacob (Liu Yajue) 劉雅覺  
*Japan Chronicle*, 56, 77  
*Japan Gazette*, 149  
 Japhet, 12, 22, 28, 29, 79, 85, 94, 105, 106, 108  
 Japhetic, 105  
 Jared, 12, 13  
 Jaxartes, 7  
 Jen Hwang, *see* Renhuang 人皇  
 Jesus, 234, 236  
 Jewish Agency for Palestine, 226  
 Jiangnan 江南, 169  
 金 (jin), 11  
 Jinanfu 濟南府, 222  
 經蓮山 (Jing Lianshan), 167  
 Jing Lianshan 經蓮山 1840–1903, 167, 168, 172, 174  
 經營位置 (jing ying wei zhi), 211



- 盡心愛國 (jinxin aiguo), 152  
 Johannesburg, 159  
 Joly, John 1857-1933, 61, 65  
 聚灰止淹水天(山)地得依然 (ju hui zhi yanshui tianshan di de yiran), 27  
 junta, 155, 159, 175
- Kai Ho Kai, *see* He Qi 何啓  
 Kai Yuan, *see* Kaiyuan 開元  
 開平縣 (Kaiping xian), 149  
 開平續泰謝聖安著 (Kaiping Zuantai Xie Sheng'an zhu), 141  
 Kaiping 開平, 149  
 開元 (Kaiyuan), 217  
 Kaiyuan 開元, 217  
 Kamchatka, 25  
 Kang, *see* Kang Youwei 康有爲  
 康廣仁 (Kang Guangren), 156  
 Kang Guangren 康廣仁 1867-1898, 156-161  
 Kang Kwang-jin, *see* Kang Guangren 康廣仁  
 Kang Youwei, *see* Kang Youwei 康有爲  
 康有爲 (Kang Youwei), 156  
 Kang Youwei 康有爲 1858-1927, 156, 157, 159, 160, 162-165, 171, 173, 180, 189, 190, 249  
 Kang Yu Wei, *see* Kang Youwei 康有爲  
 Kang Yu-wei, *see* Kang Youwei 康有爲  
 Kashgar, 7, 72  
 Khingan, *see* Xing'an 興安山  
 Khotan, 7, 72  
 Kiang Nan, *see* Jiangnan 江南  
 King Lien-shan, *see* Jing Lianshan 經蓮山  
 Kipling, Rudyard 1865-1936, 205  
 Kisch, Frederick Hermann 1888-1943, 226  
 Ko Lao Whui, *see* Gelaohui 哥老會  
 Kollecker, A. ?-?, 177  
 Kozloff, Peter 1863-1935, 225  
 Kranz ?-?, 171  
 Ku Kai Chih, *see* Gu Kaizhi 顧愷之  
 Kuan Yin, *see* Guanyin 觀音  
 Kuen Hang, *see* Qianxiang 乾亨  
 Kuen Lun, *see* Kunlun 崑崙  
 Kuen Lung, *see* Qianlong 乾隆  
 崑崙山 (Kunlun Shan), 6  
 Kunlun 崑崙, 6, 69, 106, 127, 225  
 Kuo Min Tang, *see* Guomindang 國民黨  
 Kusinagra, 235  
 Kwang Hsu, *see* Guangxu 光緒  
 Kwang Tung, *see* Guangdong 廣東  
 Kwang-tung, *see* Guangdong 廣東  
 Kwangtung, *see* Gouangdong 廣東  
 Kwok Shi, *see* Guo Shi 郭氏
- Lamaism, 234  
 Lamech, 12, 13  
 郎 (lang), 12  
 Lao, Jacob (Liu Yajue) 劉雅覺 1870-1951, 193  
 Lao, Philip van ?-?, 69, 70  
 Laozi 6th Cent. B.C.E, 72  
 Lapworth, Charles 1842-1920, 61, 62, 65  
 Lau In-bun, *see* Liu Yanbin 劉燕賓  
 Leng Lin, *see* Ling Lun 伶倫  
 Leonardo Da Vinci, 217  
 Leung Lan-fan, *see* Liang Lanfen 梁蘭芬, *see* Liang Lanfen 梁蘭芬  
 隸 (Li), 37  
 李北 (Li Bei), 166  
 Li Bei 李北 1874-1943, 166, 168, 169, 172-174, 249  
 Li Chao Tao, *see* Li Zhaodao 李昭道  
 李鴻章 (Li Hongzhang), 170  
 Li Hongzhang 李鴻章 1823-1901, 170  
 Li Hung-chang, *see* Li Hongzhang 李鴻章  
 李紀堂 (Li Jitang), 166  
 Li Jitang 李紀堂 1874-1943, 166  
 Li Ki-tong, *see* Li Jitang 李紀堂  
 Li Pak, *see* Li Bei 李北  
 Li Shan, *see* Lishan 歷山  
 李思訓 (Li Sixun), 212, 214  
 Li Sixun 李思訓 651-716, 203, 204  
 Li Sixun 李思訓, 212-216  
 Li Ssu Hsün, *see* Li Sixun 李思訓  
 Li Tzu-cheng, *see* Li Zicheng 李自成  
 Li Yuan-hung, *see* Li Yuanhong 黎元洪  
 黎元洪 (Li Yuanhong), 182  
 Li Yuanhong 黎元洪 1864-1928, 182  
 Li Yuanhong 黎元洪洪元黎, 181  
 李昭道 (Li Zhaodao), 212, 214  
 Li Zhaodao 李昭道, 212, 214  
 Li Zicheng 李自成, 144  
 Liang Chi-chao, *see* Liang Qichao 梁啟超  
 Liang Hu, *see* Lianghu 兩湖  
 Liang Lan-hsun, *see* Liang Lanxun 梁蘭勳, *see* Liang Lanxun 梁蘭勳  
 梁蘭芬 (Liang Lanfen), 156  
 Liang Lanfen 梁蘭芬 1880-?, 156, 157  
 Liang Lanfen 梁蘭芬 ?-?, 159  
 Liang Lanxun 梁蘭勳 1880-?, 156

- Liang Lanxun 樑蘭勳 1880–?, 156  
 梁啓超 (Liang Qichao), 159  
 Liang Qichao 梁啓超 1873–1923, 159, 160, 163, 165  
 Lianghu 兩湖, 158  
 煉石以補天 (山) (Lianshi yi bu Tian(shan)), 27  
 “Liberty, Freedom and Reform” (Tse, 1900), 166  
 烈裔 (Lie Yi), 207  
 Lie Yi 烈裔, 207  
 Lieh I, *see* Lie Yi 烈裔  
 Lin Shao-yang, 181  
 Lin Shio, *see* Lin Xu 林旭  
 Lin Xu 林旭 1875–1898, 160  
 伶倫 (Ling Lun), 38  
 Ling Lun 伶倫, 38  
 歷山 (Lishan), 40  
 Lishan 歷山, 40  
 Little, Alice [Mrs. Archibald—] 1845–1926, 147, 167, 168, 193, 249  
 Liu Guangdi 劉光第 1861–1898, 160  
 Liu Kwang-ti, *see* Liu Guangdi 劉光第  
 劉雅覺 (Liu Yajue), 193  
 劉燕賓 (Liu Yanbin), 151  
 Liu Yanbin 劉燕賓, 151  
 Liu Yulin 1862–1942, 189  
 六合 (liuhe), 11  
 Lo Man-yuk, *see* Luo Wenyu 羅文玉  
 Lockhart, James Haldane Stewart 1858–1937, 150  
 Loh, *see* Luo 洛  
*London Globe*, 149  
*London Times*, 148, 149, 173, 182, 187  
 Longmen 龍門, 206  
 Lop Nor, 7, 34  
 Loyang, *see* Luoyang 洛陽  
 陸敬科 (Lu Jingke), 152  
 Lu Jingke 陸敬科 1863–1945, 152, 159  
 Luk King-fo, *see* Lu Jingke 陸敬科  
 Lukchun, 26, 27  
 Lung Men, *see* Longmen 龍門  
 羅文玉 (Luo Wenyu), 151  
 Luo Wenyu 羅文玉, 151  
 Luo 洛, 37  
 洛間 (Luodian), 37  
 Luoyang 洛陽, 235  
  
 馬遠 (Ma Yuan), 213  
 Ma Yuan 馬遠, 213  
*Malaya Tribune*, 149  
 Macao, 167, 168  
  
 Government, 168  
 Mackenzie River, 58, 92  
 Malaleel, 12, 13  
 Manchu, 158  
 Canton Government, 151  
 Canton officials, 151  
 Chinese Legation (London), 155  
 corruption, 190  
 Court, 182  
 dynasty, 148, 184, 187  
 dynasty, end of the, 187  
 Emperor, 144, 154, 187  
 machine, 184  
 misrule, 145  
 Peking Government, 160  
 regime, 152, 183, 184  
 Tartars, 144, 145, 150  
 usurpers, 145, 164, 190  
 “Manchu Rule” (Tse, 1902), 174  
 Manchuria, 179  
 Manchus, 144, 147, 161, 184–187, 194  
 Marie Salomea 1867–1934, 240  
 Marriott Watson, Henry Brereton 1863–1921, 99, 100  
 Mathusala, 12, 13  
 Maxim, Hiram Stevens 1840–1916, 147, 180–182  
 Maxim, Hiram Stevens 1840–1916, 248  
 Merrill, 61, 62, 65  
 米芾 (Mi Fei), 213  
 Mi Fei 米芾, 213  
 Ming, 144, 145  
 Ming Dynasty, 180  
 明皇 (Ming Huang), 204, 214  
 Ming Huang 明皇, 204, 214  
 Ming Keh, *see* mingjia 莫莢  
 Ming Ti, *see* Mingdi 明帝  
 Ming Wang, *see* Ming Huang 明皇  
 明帝 (Mingdi), 213  
 Mingdi 明帝 28–75, 235–237  
 Mingdi 明帝, 213  
 莫莢 (mingjia), 39  
 mingjia 莫莢, 39  
 Mitchell, Clara B. 1870–1947, 239  
 Mona Lisa, 217  
 Mongolian Plateau, 8, 26  
 Mongolian plateau, 14  
 Monte Forte Prison (Macao), 167, 172  
 Morrison, George Ernest 1862–1920, 197

- Morrison, George Ernest 1862–1920, 146, 147, 173–176, 178, 179, 181, 182, 191, 193, 195–198, 237, 249
- Moses, 29
- 木 (mu), 11
- Murray, John 1841–1914, 61, 65, 89, 93
- Mustaghata Peak, 28
- Nam-hoi, see Nanhai 南海
- 南齊 (Nan Qi), 211
- Nanhai 南海, 156
- Nanjing 南京, 182, 191
- Nanking, see Nanjing 南京
- Narat Mountains, 28
- National Anthem  
Chinese —, 193
- Nemrod, 9
- New York Herald*, 148
- New York Sun*, 148
- Ng Choy, see Wu Cai 伍才
- Ng Lo-sam, see Wu Laosan 吳老三
- Ng Sui-sang, see Wu Ruisheng 吳瑞生
- Noah, 7–10, 12, 13, 17, 22, 23, 27, 28, 30, 73, 75, 84, 96, 106–109, 121, 127
- North China Daily News*, 181
- Ntoo, Macamoto ?–?, 170
- Nuerhachi 努爾哈赤 1559–1626, 144
- Nurhachu, see Nuerhachi 努爾哈赤
- Nü Wa, see Nüwa 女媧, see Nüwa 女媧氏  
女媧氏 (Nüwa Shi), 7, 17, 23, 24, 27
- Nüwa , 30
- Nüwa 女媧, 17
- Nüwa 女媧氏, 22, 24, 27
- Obruchev, Vladimir Afanasyevich 1863–1956, 27
- Open Letter (Tse, 1895), 154
- Open Letter (Tse, 1911), 180
- Origin of Species, 44
- Origin of the Chinese*, 32
- Orme, Geoffrey Norman 1878–?, 103–105, 109
- Osaki, Y. ?–?, 170
- Oxus, 7, 72, 84, 106
- Pacific Continent, 98, 128, 129
- Pak Tze Lane, see Baizi Li 百子里
- Pamir Tableland, 6
- Pangu 盤古, 10
- Panku, see Pangu 盤古
- Peking, see Beijing 北京
- Perzusk, F. , 220
- Petrie, Thomas, 182
- Petrie, Thomas ?–?, 147, 249
- Phaleg, 23, 35, 42
- pictographic script, 206
- Pison, 7
- Po Wang Whui, see Baohuanghui 保皇會
- Pomponious Mela, 79
- Prichard, James Cowles 1786–1848, 65
- Proclamation to the Foreign Powers (Reid and Cowen, 1895), 154
- Protect the Emperor Society, 165
- “Protect the Emperor” Society, 165
- Ptolemy, 79
- Pumpelly, Raphael 1837–1923, 58
- 氣運生動 (qi yun sheng dong), 211
- 錢迺 (Qian Nai), 218
- Qian Nai 錢迺, 218
- 乾隆 (Qianlong), 215
- Qianlong 乾隆,, 215
- Qianlong 乾隆, 215
- 乾享 (Qianxiang), 152
- Qianxiang 乾享, 152, 154
- 樵 (qiao), 208
- Qin Shi Huangdi 秦始皇帝, 72
- Qing 慶親王 1838–1917, 184
- Queen’s College, 150, 152
- R.H. 容宏 1828–1912, 187
- Reid, Thomas H. ?–?, 147, 148, 152–154, 160, 167, 170, 175, 177, 193, 195, 249, 250
- 人皇 (Renhuang), 12, 13
- Renhuang 人皇, 13
- Republic, 187, 191
- Republic of China, 147  
Provisional President of, 182
- Republican Party, 164
- Reu, 18, 23, 35, 38, 42
- Prince Reuss, 220
- 日 (ri), 11
- Richard, Louis 1868–1950, 70, 71, 80
- Richard, Timothy 1845–1919, 147, 159, 161, 162, 171, 174, 191–193, 237, 249
- Richthofen, Ferdinand Paul Wilhelm, Baron von 1833–1905, 58, 61, 62, 65
- Roggeveen, Jacob 1659–1729, 122

- 容宏博士 (Rong Hong boshi), 168, 171  
 Rong Hong 容宏 1828–1912, 147, 168, 169, 171, 172, 174, 175, 179, 180, 182, 183, 185–187, 191, 249  
 容星橋 (Rong Xingqiao), 171  
 Rong Xingqiao 容星橋 1865–1933, 171  
 Rosellini, Ippolito 1800–1843, 29  
 Routledge, Katherine Maria [Mrs. Scoresby—] 1866–1935, 66, 67, 94  
 “Russia and China” (Tse, 1911), 180  
 “Russia and Manchuria” (Tse, 1903), 178
- Saikwan, *see* Xiguan 西關  
 Saint Paul, 236  
 Sale, 23, 35  
 Salisbury, Rollin Daniel 1858–1922, 61, 62, 65  
 San Pak, *see* Shen Bo 申伯  
 Sarikol Mountains, 28  
 Scott Harston, J. ?–?, 177, 249  
 See, John 1831–1903, 149  
 Semitic, 60  
 Seth, 12–14  
 陝西 (Shaanxi), 8, 9, 23, 30  
 Shaanxi 陝西, 8, 9, 23, 30  
 Shandong, 34  
 山東 (Shandong), 42, 43  
 Shandong 山東, 42, 43, 181, 206, 222–224  
 上帝 (Shangdi), 30  
*Shanghai Mercury*, 149  
 Shanghai 上海, 159–161, 167, 171, 174, 178, 182, 183, 189, 191  
 Shansi, *see* Shanxi 山西  
 Shantung, *see* Shandong 山東  
 山西 (Shanxi), 23, 30  
 Shanxi 山西, 23, 30  
 少昊金天氏 (Shao Hao Jintian Shi), 23  
 Shem, 9, 12, 18, 22, 23, 28, 30, 33, 85, 94, 105, 106, 108  
 Shemites, 105, 128, 129  
 Shemitic, 60, 105, 130  
 申伯 (Shen Bo), 149  
 Shen Bo 申伯, 149  
 Shen Nung, *see* Shennong Yandi 神農炎帝, *see* Shennong 神農  
 聖安 (Sheng'an), 48, 133  
 神農炎帝 (Shennong Yandi), 18, 23, 28, 30  
 Shennong Yandi 神農炎帝, 33  
 Shennong 神農), 30  
 Shennong 神農, 18, 33, 43  
 Shensi, *see* Shaanxi 陝西  
 Sheung Po, 179  
 師大撓 (Shi Da Nao), 37  
 Shi Da Nao 師大撓, 37  
 史堅如 (Shi Jianru), 171  
 Shi Jianru 史堅如 1879–1900, 171  
 史記 (Shiji), 206  
 時局全圖 (Shiju quantu), v  
 Shina, 58  
 Shinar, 8, 9, 48, 59, 75, 77, 79, 84, 85, 108, 133  
 Shu King, *see* Shujing 書經  
 水 (shui), 11  
 Shujing 書經, 206  
 Shun, *see* Shun 舜  
 舜 (Shun), 42, 206  
 Shun Chih, *see* Shunzhi 順治  
 Shun 舜, 40–43, 206  
 Shunzhi 順治 r. 1643–1661, 144  
 Sichuan 四川, 181  
 Siddhartha, 234, 235  
 “The Situation in the Far East” (cartoon, Tse 1899), v, 164, 249  
 Smart, Colin McD. ?–?, 147, 170  
 Smith, D. Warres ?–?, 147, 167, 168, 174, 175, 182, 188, 191, 249  
 Smith, Grafton Elliot 1871–1937, 93, 95, 97  
 Sollas, William Johnson 1849–1936, 61, 65  
 宋 (Song), 207, 212–214  
 Song 宋, 207, 208, 210, 212–215  
 Song 宋, 239  
 Soothill, William Edward 1861–1935, 162  
 ,, 177  
*South China Morning Post*, 61, 64, 66, 69, 114, 117, 120, 124, 126, 127, 142, 148, 178–180, 182, 199n, 234  
 St. Paul, 234  
*The Standard*, 148  
 Stein, Aurel 1862–1943, 34, 80, 206  
 Strabo, 79  
*Straits Echo*, 149  
*Straits Times*, 148, 149, 194  
 Stübel, Oscar Wilhelm 1846–1921, 220  
 蘇軾 (Su Shi), 215  
 Su Shi 蘇軾, 215  
 Su Shih, *see* Su Shi 蘇軾  
 Su Ta Lao, *see* Shi Da Nao 師大撓

- Subao 蘇報, 178  
 Sui, 208  
 隋 (Sui), 208  
 歲 (sui), 13  
 Sui Jen, *see* Sui Ren 燧人  
 隨類傳彩 (sui lei chuan cai), 211  
 Sui Ren 燧人, 16  
 Sun, *see* Sun Zhongshan 孫中山  
 Sun Ching On Hang, 163  
 Sun Fo, *see* Sun Ke 孫科  
 Sun Ke 孫科 1891–1973, 239  
 Sun Yat Sen, *see* Sun Zhongshan 孫中山  
 Sun Yat-sen, *see* Sun Zhongshan 孫中山  
 Sun Yatsen, *see* Sun Zhongshan 孫中山  
 孫逸仙 (Sun Yixian [Sun Zhongshan]), 152  
 Sun Zhongshan 孫中山 1866–1925, 145–147, 152–155, 158, 160, 166, 169, 170, 172, 174, 176, 178–180, 182, 185, 186, 188, 189, 191, 194, 199, 239  
 Sung, *see* Song 宋  
 Supao, *see* Subao 蘇報  
 Sydney, 149, 150  
 Sze Kin-yu, *see* Shi Jianru 史堅如  
 Sze-chuan, *see* Sichuan 四川
- Ta Shun, *see* Da Shun 大舜  
 Ta Tsing, *see* Da Qing 大清  
 Ta Tung, *see* Datong 大同殿, *see* Datong 大通  
 Ta Yü, *see* Da Yu 大禹  
 Tai Ching, 144  
 Tai Ping, *see* Taiping 太平  
 Tai Shan, *see* Taishan 泰山  
 Tai Yick-firm, 149  
 Taiping, 145  
 Taiping 太平, 165  
 泰山 (Taishan), 43, 206  
 Taishan 泰山, 43, 206  
 泰益 (Taiyi), 149  
 Tak Sau, *see* De Shou 德壽  
 Takla Makan Desert, 26  
 Tan, *see* Tan Xichou [Tan, H.C.] 譚錫疇  
 Tan Sitong 譚嗣同 1865–1898, 160  
 Tan Sze-tung, *see* Tan Sitong 譚嗣同  
 Tan Xichou [Tan, H.C.] 譚錫疇 1892–1952, 222, 225  
 Tang, 208, 210, 212, 214, 216, *see* Tang 唐  
 唐 (Tang), 208, 212, 214  
 唐才常 (Tang Caichang), 171  
 Tang Caichang 唐才常 1867–1900, 171
- 唐大李將軍山水 (Tang Da Li Jiangjun shanshui), 215  
 Tang Shao-yi, *see* Tang Shaoyi 唐紹儀  
 唐紹儀 (Tang Shaoyi), 169  
 Tang Shaoyi 唐紹儀 1862–1938, 169, 183, 184  
 Tang Tsai-chang, *see* Tang Caichang 唐才常  
 Tang 唐, 203  
 Tao Yuan, *see* Daoyuan 道元  
 Tarim, 6, 59, 72, 84, 106  
 Tarim River, 7, 14  
 Tei, *see* Daimiao 岱廟  
 The Cradle of the Human Race, 88, 93, 95  
 Three Lights, 11  
 Ti Hwang, *see* Dihuang 地皇  
 Ti Kuh Kao Sin, *see* Di Ku Gaoxin Shi 帝侂高辛氏  
 天 (Tian), 30  
 Tian 天, 30  
 天 (山) 柱折下震維穿 (Tian(shan) zhu zhe xia zhen wei chuan), 27  
 天皇 (Tianhuang), 12  
 Tianhuang 天皇, 12  
 Tianjin 天津, 189  
 天命 (tianming), 144  
 天山 (Tianshan), 6, 7, 21, 22, 26, 27  
 Tianshan 天山, 6, 7, 21, 22, 26–28, 69, 74, 75, 79, 84, 85, 90, 96, 106, 108, 127, 225  
 Tibet, 7, 26, 234  
 Tien, *see* Tian 天  
 Tien Huang, *see* Tianhuang 天皇  
 Tien Shan, *see* Tianshan 天山  
 Tien-shan, *see* Tianshan 天山  
 Tienshan, *see* Tianshan 天山  
 Tientsin, *see* Tianjin 天津  
*The Times*, 237  
*Times*, 146, 173, 198  
*Times of Malaya*, 149  
*Timothy Richard of China* (Soothill 1924), 162  
 同盟會 (Tongmenghui), 155, 166  
 Tongmenghui 同盟會, 155, 166  
 Tower of Babel, 9  
 Tsai Ao, *see* Cai E 蔡萼  
 Tsang Chi, *see* Cangjie 倉頡  
 Tsang Chieh, *see* Cangjie 倉頡  
 Tse, *see* Xie 謝  
 Tse Tsan-ip, *see* Xie Zuanye 謝纘業  
 Tse Tsi-shau, *see* Xie Zixiu 謝子修  
 Tse Yet-chong, *see* Xie Richang 謝日昌  
 Tseng Hsuan, *see* Zeng Xuan 曾選

- Tsinanfu, *see* Jinanfu 濟南府  
 Tsong Chi, *see* Cangjie 倉頡  
 Tsu Sien-ting, *see* Xu Shanting 徐善亭  
 Tsun Wan Yat Po, *see* Xunhuan Ribao 循環日報  
 Tsung Ching, *see* Chongzheng 崇禎帝  
 Tsung Teh, *see* Chongde 崇德  
 土 (tu), 11  
 Tubal-cain, 20  
 Tun Huang, *see* Dunhuang 敦煌  
 Tung Meng Whui, *see* Tongmenghui 同盟會  
 Turfan Oasis, 26  
 Turkestan, 57
- U Lai-un, *see* Hu Liyuan 胡禮垣  
 Ulug-art, 28  
 Universal Disarmament, 44  
 Universal Peace, 2, 44, 104  
 universal peace and brotherhood, 205  
 Ur, 226, 227, 231, 233  
*Ur of the Chaldees*, 226
- Versey, Henry Cherry 1894–1990, 246  
 Voretzsch, Ernst Arthur 1868–1965, 220
- Prince Waldemar 1889–1945, 220  
 Wallace, Alfred Russel 1823–1913, 61, 65, 94, 95  
 汪精衛 (Wang Jingwei), 180  
 Wang Jingwei 汪精衛 1883–1944, 180  
 王維 (Wang Wei), 212, 215  
 Wang Wei 王維, 212, 213, 215, 216  
 Wei Chow, *see* Huizhou 惠州  
 Wei Yu (Baoshan) 韋玉寶珊, 248  
 Wei Yuk, *see* Wei Yu (Baoshan) 韋玉寶珊  
 Wei-hai-wei, *see* Weihaiwei 威海衛  
 Wei-Yuk Boshan 1849–1921, 248  
 Weihaiwei 威海衛, 150  
 Whang Ho, *see* Huanghe 黃河  
 Whang-Ho, *see* Huanghe 黃河  
 “What made the Soil of the United States fertile” (Tse 1923), 234  
 Wong Chin-wei, *see* Wang Jingwei 汪精衛  
 Wong Hing, *see* Huang Xing 黃興  
 Wong Kong, *see* Huanggang 皇崗  
 Wong Kwok-u, *see* Huang Guoyu 黃國瑜  
 Wong Shing, *see* Huang Sheng 黃勝  
 Wong Wing-sheung, *see* Huang Yongshang 黃詠商  
 Woo Gon-chi, *see* Hu Ganzhi 胡幹芝  
 Woolley, Charles Leonard 1880–1960, 226, 227, 230, 231
- Woosung, *see* Wusong 吳淞  
 World’s Chinese Students’ Federation, proposal for the formation of — (Tse, 1904), 179  
 Wright, William Bourke 1876–1939, 94  
 Wu Cai 伍才 1842–1922, 189  
 吳道玄 (Wu Daoxuan), 216  
 Wu Daoxuan 吳道玄, 216  
 吳道元 (Wu Daoyuan), 216  
 Wu Daoyuan 吳道元, 216  
 吳道子 (Wu Daozi), 208, 216  
 Wu Daozi 吳道子, 208, 216, 217  
 Wu Han-man, *see* Hu Hanmin 胡漢民  
 吳老三 (Wu Laosan), 173  
 Wu Laosan 吳老三 ?–?, 173  
 伍連德博士 (Wu Liande boshi), 179  
 Wu Liande 伍連德 1879–1960, 179  
 Wu Lien-teh, *see* Wu Liande 伍連德  
 吳瑞生 (Wu Ruisheng), 173  
 Wu Ruisheng 吳瑞生 ?–?, 173  
 Wu San-kwei, *see* Wu Sangui 吳三桂  
 Wu Sangui 吳三桂 1612–1678, 144  
 Wu Tao Tzu, *see* Wu Daozi 吳道子  
 Wu Tao Yuan, *see* Wu Daoxuan 吳道玄, *see* Wu Daoyuan 吳道元  
 Wu Ti, *see* Wudi 武帝  
 Wu Tingfang 1842–1922, 189  
 Wuchang 武昌, 181, 182  
 Wudi 武帝 BCE 141–87, 236  
 Wusong 吳淞, 173
- 夏 (Xia), 42  
 夏珪 (Xia Gui), 213  
 Xia Gui 夏珪, 213  
 Xia 夏, 42  
 謝 (Xie), 149  
 謝赫 (Xie He), 211  
 Xie He 謝赫, 211  
 謝日昌 (Xie Richang), 149  
 Xie Richang 謝日昌 1831–1903, 149, 178  
 謝詩屏 (Xie Shipin [Tse Yet, Francisco]), 193  
 Xie Shipin [Tse Yet, Francisco] 謝詩屏, 193  
 謝子修續葉 (Xie Zixiu Zuanye), 176  
 Xie Zixiu 謝子修 ?–?, 176, 177, 249  
 謝續泰聖安 (Xie Zuantai Sheng’an), 4  
 Xie Zuanye 謝續葉 ?–?, 176  
 Xie 謝, 149  
 Xiguan 西關, 146, 200  
 星 (xing), 11

- Xing'an 興安山, 8, 48, 133  
 興中會 (Xingzhonghui), 152, 155  
 Xingzhonghui 興中會, 145, 152, 155, 249  
 新疆 (Xinjiang), 3, 6, 7  
 Xinjiang 新疆, 206, 213  
 徐善亭 (Xu Shanting), 167  
 Xu Shanting 徐善亭 1854–1912, 167  
 玄 (Xuan), 217  
 Xuantong 宣統 emperor, r. 1908–1912, 187  
 玄宗 (Xuanzong), 217  
 Xuanzong 元宗, 217  
 Xunhuan Ribao 循環日報, 198
- Y. W., see R.H. 容宏  
 Yam Lim, 179  
 yamen, 171, 180  
 燕文貴 (Yan Wengui), 213  
 Yan Wengui 燕文貴, 213  
 巖與 (Yan Yu), 215  
 Yan Yu 巖與, 215  
 陽 (yang), 10  
 楊衢雲 (Yang Quyun), 151  
 Yang Quyun 楊衢雲 1861–1901, 145, 151–155, 158–160, 162–166, 168–170, 172, 173  
 Yang-tze, see Yangzi 揚子  
 Yangtze, see Yangzi 揚子  
 Yangzi 揚子, 155, 159, 162, 165, 166, 182, 212, 213, 224  
 堯 (Yao), 42  
 Yao 堯, 18, 38–43  
 Yarkhand, 7, 72  
 Yellow River, 8, 30, 58–60, 62, 63, 67, 71, 74, 75, 79, 85, 90, 107–109  
 Yen Siu, see Yan Yu 巖與  
 Yen Wen Kuei, see Yan Wengui 燕文貴  
 Yeung Ku-wan, see Yang Quyun 楊衢雲  
 Yeung Kuwan, see Yang Quyun 楊衢雲  
 益 (Yi), 40  
 Yi 益, 40  
 陰 (yin), 10  
 應物寫形 (ying wu xie xing), 211  
 You Chao 有巢, 16  
 尤烈 (You Lie), 155  
 You Lie 尤烈, 155  
 Young, Charles Augustus 1834–1908, 94  
 Yow Lit, see You Lie 尤烈  
 Yu, see Yu 禹  
 禹 (Yu), 42  
 魚 (Yu), 37  
 漁 (yu), 208  
 Yu Chao, see You Chao 有巢  
 Yu 大禹, 42  
 Yu 禹, 39  
 Yu 禹, 42  
 Yuan, see Yuan Shikai 袁世凱  
 元 (Yuan), 217, 218  
 Yuan Shih-kai, see Yuan Shikai 袁世凱  
 袁世凱 (Yuan Shikai), 182, 195  
 Yuan Shikai 袁世凱 1859–1916, 146, 147, 181–184, 187, 188, 190, 193, 195–198  
 Yuan Ti, see Yuandi 元帝  
 Yuan Tsung, see Xuanzong 元宗  
 Yuan 元, 218  
 元帝 (Yuandi), 207  
 Yuandi 元帝, 207  
 月 (yue), 11  
 Yung Sing-kiu, see Rong Xingqiao 容星橋  
 Yung Wing, see Rong Hong 容宏  
 Yunnan, 180  
 曾選 (Zeng Xuan), 218  
 Zeng Xuan 曾選, 218  
 展子虔 (Zhan Ziqian), 208  
 Zhan Ziqian 展子虔, 208  
 張才 (Zhang Cai), 159  
 Zhang Cai 才?, 159  
 Zhang Shoubo 張壽波 1868–1946, 170  
 張之洞 (Zhang Zhidong), 158  
 Zhang Zhidong 張之洞 1837–1909, 158  
 鄭弼臣 (Zheng Bichen), 171  
 Zheng Bichen 鄭弼臣 1863–1901, 171  
 Zhili 直隸, 144, 147, 181  
 Zhong-Wai xinbao 中外新報, 189  
 中國合衆府政社會 (Zhongguo hezhong zhengfu shehui), 164  
 Zhongguo hezhong zhengfu shehui 中國合衆府政社會, 164  
 Zhonghua 中華, 236  
 周 (Zhou), 213  
 周朝 (Zhou chao), 149  
 周朝嶽 (Zhou Chaoyue), 151  
 Zhou Chaoyue 周朝嶽, 151  
 Zhou 周, 149, 213  
 Zhu Yuanzhang 朱元璋 1328–1398, 144  
 顓頊高陽氏 (Zhuan Xu Gaoyang Shi), 42  
 Zhuan Xu Gaoyang Shi 顓頊高陽氏, 42

顓頊高陽氏 (Zhuan Xu Gaoyang Shi), 23

涿鹿裏 (Zhuoluli), 36

Zhurong Gonggong (Shi) 祝融共工氏, 20

子 (zi), 12

Ziggurat, 227

書經 (书经), 206

道玄 (玄道), 217

耕 (耕), 208







# Bibliography

Anon. [Tse, Tsan Tai]. "Racial Knowledge. Two Distinguished Contributors." *Hongkong Daily Press*, January 9, 1937.

Duncan, Chesney. "Tse Tsan Tai 謝纘泰: His Political & Journalistic Career." A Brief Record. In *Present Day Impressions of the Far East and Prominent and Progressive Chinese at Home and Abroad: The History, People, Commerce, Industries and Resources of China, Hongkong, Indo-China, Malaya and Netherlands India*, edited by W. H. Morton Cameron and W. Feldwick, 583–585. London: Globe Encyclopedia Company, 1917.

Tse, Tsan Tai. "A Prehistoric City." *South China Morning Post*, December 5, 1931.

———. *Ancient Chinese Art. A Treatise on Chinese Painting*. 18 pp. Hong Kong: South China Morning Post, Ltd., 1928.

———. "Jesus or Buddha? Historical Survey. Doubt as to Origin. China and Christianity." *Hongkong Daily Press*, October 13, 1936.

———. *No. 1.: The Cradle of the Human Race: The Cause of The Deluge and The Change in the Antediluvian Polar Regions — A Reply to "The Japan Chronicle"*. Pamphlet [printed by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong], 1915.

———. *No. 2.: Proofs of the Deluge: The Upheaval and Subsidence of Continents and the Change to the North Polar Regions, a Reply to Alfred H. Crook, MA FRGS*. Pamphlet [printed by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong], 1917.

- Tse, Tsan Tai. *No. 3.: The Real Situation of "Eden" — Proofs of the Deluge and the Great Upheaval of Central Asia — Origin of Loess deposits, Salt Lakes, Salt Marshes & Deserts: A Reply to The Roman Catholic Encyclopaedian Society of Macao*. Pamphlet [printed by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong], 1918.
- . *No. 4.: China in the Time of the Deluge — Origin of the Crustaceans of Taihu Lake of China — China The "Shinar" of Genesis — Why the Ancients of The West Failed to Discover China: A Reply to Notes of the Royal Asiatic Society*. Pamphlet [printed by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong], 1918.
- . *No. 5.: Truth of the Bible and the Dean of Lincoln's Disbelief: Historical, Geographical & Scientific Proofs of the Truth of the Biblical Record of Eden and the Flood*. Pamphlet [printed by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong], 1919.
- . *No. 6.: Loess and the Deluge — Chinese Turkestan the Cradle of the Human Race — Cause of Upheaval and Subsidence of Continents, Change in North Polar Regions, and Sudden Freezing of Northern Asia — Fallacy of the Ice Age: A Reply to Alfred H. Crook, M.A., FRGS*. Pamphlet [printed by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong], 1920.
- . *No. 7.: Solution of "The Dark Mystery of the East" and The Origin and Age of Ancient Human Bones of the Valley of Mexico City*. Pamphlet [printed by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong], 1921.
- . *No. 8.: What Was the Colour of Our Primitive Ancestors? The Real Mountains of Ararat*. Pamphlet [printed by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong], 1922.
- . *No. 9.: Origin of the Mongolian Desert, and Its Prehistoric Fossils*. Pamphlet [printed by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong], 1923.
- . *No. 10.: "Correlativity": New Theory of the Universe and Origin of Typhoons*. Pamphlet [printed by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong], 1923.
- . *No. 11.: Solution of Easter Island Mystery*. Pamphlet [printed by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong], 1923.

- . *No. 12.: Ancient History — Mysterious Blank in Egypt — The Age of the Siberian Mammoth*. Pamphlet [printed by Kelly & Walsh, Hongkong], 1923.
- . “Oldest Beetle in the World. Fallacy of 15,000,000 Years Exploded.” *North China Daily News*, October 14, 1924.
- . *The Chinese Republic. Secret History of the Revolutioon*. First edition. Hongkong: South China Morning Post, Ltd., 1924.
- . *The Creation., the Real Situation of Eden, and the Origin of the Chinese*. Hongkong: Kelly & Walsh, Ltd., 1914.
- . “The Mystery of ‘The Deluge.’ What Recent Discoveries at Ur of the Chaldees Suggest: World Wide or Local Catastrophe?” *Hongkong Daily Press*, May 2, 1931.
- . “The War as a Punishment.” Letter to the Editor. *Hong Kong Daily Press*, December 11, 1916.
- Wang, Dong. *Tse Tsan Tai (1872–1938): An Australian-Cantonese Opinion Maker in British Hong Kong*. New York: Lived Places Publishing, 2023.